

**701** While the convict was dragged to the torture chamber,  
the inquisitor had **sneaked / snug away** from the assessors.

**Dressed in / wearing secular clothes**, he sneaked out of  
the **inquisitorial office**, and **headed for** a pub.

The pub **thronged with** guests.

A motley crowd of guests **thronged** the pub.

As the pub **was thronged with** guests, he **met with**  
the **heady** scent of smoke, food and drink, pleasantly strong.

He got a glass of beer with a **head**.

**10** Affecting him strongly, the **heady atmosphere** of the pub  
made the inquisitor **have** his **head in the clouds**.

His thoughts went back to the **heady days of his youth**.

Going to the pub **brings** a slight **mitigation** of the mono->  
tonomy of his existence.

After **heady** combination of beer, wine and brandy,  
the **headstrong** inquisitor took steps **to make a pass /**  
**make passes at a provocative** woman even though  
he was warned against it / doing so.

He **inquired whether** she wanted to sit down at a table.

**20** A **heady** combination of desire and fear made him tremble  
as he started to make advances to her.

**On the make**, trying to **get off with** her / **make up to** her,  
he was **lured into** a card game with a friend of hers.

As the inquisitor won the first couple of rounds,  
he felt **heady** ( pred. of a person ) **with** success.

Going **to** his **head**, the success **turned** his **head**.

He **got** a **big head** ( about it ).

In games, start small and don't **get in over** your **head**.

As the success **went to** his **head**, the inquisitor failed to

**30** realize that he had **fallen into** the **clutches of** a couple of  
`**confidence tricksters**.

With the intention of **tricking** people, `**con artists**  
and **con men** are always on the outlook for a `**fall guy**.

Intent (up)on **conning / tricking** people **out of** money,  
con men try to **con / trick** people **into** losing their money.

Knowing a lot of `**confidence tricks** E/A **games**,  
a con artist **cons** his **way into** people's **confidence**

Knowing every **con / trick**, he deceives people  
in order to **cheat** them ( **out** ) of money.

\*

\* snige sig bort fra ng.

\* klædt i / bære > \* verdslige > \* klæder

\* inquisitionskontor / -bygning \* styre mod ng.

\* myldre med ng.

\* fylde / trænges i ng.

\* være fyldt / proppet med ng. \* mødes af ng.

\* berusende

\* ~ skumtop

\* berusende > \* atmosfære / stemning

\* have tankerne andetsteds  
have flyvske ideer

\* berusende \* ngs. ungdoms

\* bibringe afbødning / lindring af ng.

\*

\* berusende

\* viljestærk \* gøre tilnærmelser til /  
stædig lægge an på ng.

\* ( seksuelt ) udfordrende

\*

\* forespørge hvorvidt / om -

\* berusende

\* gøre tilnærmelser til ng.

\* ude på lir \* komme i lag med ng.

\* lokke ng. ud i ng.

\*

\* beruset af ng.

\* stige ng. til hovedt \* fordreje hovedet på ng.  
gøre ng. indbildsk

\* blive storsnudet ( over ng. )

\* foretage sig noget over evne  
slå et for stort brød op

\* stige en til hovedet

\* falde i kløerne på ng.

\* bondefanger

\* narre ng.

\* bondefanger

\* =

\* nemt offer

\* narre ng. ud af / fra ng.

\* ... ng. ind i ng.

\* bondefangerkneb

\* snyde sig vej ind til >

\* fortrolighed

\* ( bondefanger-) kneb / trik

\* narre ng. fra ng.

<b>702 In an act of cold calculation</b> , the con man now and then	* i en handling ud fra >	* kølig	* beregning
lost a game <b>on purpose</b> simply to mislead his victim.	* med vilje		
Giving his opponent a <b>calculated</b> look,	* udspekuleret		
the <b>con man calculatedly</b> looked him ( straight ) in the face.	* bondefanger		* =
Giving his adversary a <b>calculating</b> look	* beregnende		
he <b>calculatingly</b> threw off a wrong card	* =		
in order to lose the game <b>by design</b> .	* med vilje		
It was a <b>calculated game</b> .	* udspekuleret spil		
It was a <b>con</b> ; it was a classic(al) <b>confidence trick / game</b>	* bondefangertrick		* =
<b>10</b> After some more rounds, the inquisitor failed to realize	*		
that he no longer <b>headed</b> the <b>table</b> ( <b>of results</b> ).	* ~ føre på resultattavlen		
He must have had too much <b>heady</b> wine.	* berusende		
The wine must have <b>gone to</b> his <b>head</b> .	* stige én til hovedet		
In fact, he never <b>had a week head for liquor</b> .	* ~ ikke kunne tåle >	* sprut ( E : alkoholisk drik )	
As he used to <b>have a strong head for liquor</b>	* ~ kunne tåle >	A : stærk - = -	* =
he thought that he still <b>had a good head for liquor</b> .	* - = -		
<b>Before</b> he <b>was aware of it</b> , he had lost a lot of money.	* før ng. ved af det		
The inquisitor decided to <b>go for broke</b>	* sætte alt på et bræt		
when the con man suggested to <b>play double or quits</b> .			* spille kvit eller
<b>20</b> As the con man <b>knew a thing or two</b> ( <b>about playing</b>	* kende til lidt af hvert		* spille >
his <b>cards right</b> ), the inquisitor ends up ( <b>flat / stone</b> ) <b>broke</b> .	* sine kort rigtigt ( & fig. )	* helt flad / blanket af	
<b>Ultimately</b> , con men always <b>make the winnings</b> –	* i sidste ende	* score gevinsten	
<b>rest assured</b> ( <b>that they will</b> ) – <b>rest easy on that head</b> .	* være forvisset om at	* være rolig på det punkt / hvad det angår	
<b>Knowing every trick in the `book</b> , a con man knows how	* kende alle kneb		
to pretend to be honest / <b>on the `level</b> /&A <b>on the up and `up</b> .	* ærlig hæderlig		
A con man only <b>picks out / selects managable</b> victims,	* & udse sig		* medgørlig overkommelig
who gladly believe his acting to be legal / <b>on the `level</b> .	* <<		
Pretending to play <b>on a level `playing field with</b>	* på samme niveau som ng.		
his opponent, <b>making</b> no or just <b>rough calculations</b> , the con>	* foretage / lave >		* løselig beregning
<b>30</b> man in fact, <b>did</b> a precise <b>calculation</b> at each decision.	* =		
It was <b>calculated confidence tricks</b> (pl.).	* kalkuleret velovervejet		* bondefangeri
<b>Having a long head</b> and only taking <b>calculated</b> risks,	* være durkdreven forudseende		* kalkuleret
the con man never took an <b>uncalculated</b> risk.	* ikke ...		
His efficiency and intelligence were <b>beyond question</b> .	* hævet over enhver tvivl		
<b>Conned into a confidence trick</b> , and <b>conned out of</b>	* narre ng. ind i ng. * bondefangeri	* franarre ng. ng	
all his money, the inquisitor was <b>in over</b> his <b>head</b> .	* på dybt vand ude i mere end ng. kan klare		
<b>Making / pulling a long face</b> , he realized too late	* lang i ansigtet skuffet, ked af det		
he had been <b>entrapped</b> and <b>tricked</b> .	* lokke ng. i en fælde	* snyde / narre / bedrage ng.	

**703** The con man **summons** the **head waiter**

who had already **calculated** their bill.

The inquisitor looked at it and **made** some **calculations**.

He and the con man had an argument about the bill.

They **went head to head** to be **quits**.

After an excessive quantity of wine and beer,

the inquisitor **tripped over** the **words**,

and **tripped up in** the **words** of the sentences.

Nevertheless, having **tangled with** the head waiter

**10** over the bill, he **shouted** and **screamed** his **head off**.

He was **out of / off** his **head** after excessive drinking.

The waiter told him to shut up and **keep** his **head down**.

Rather than **going head to head with** the **hotheads**,

the head waiter decided to try a more **subtle** approach.  
`sütl

So he suggested a compromise **to** the **effect that**

the question was decided **by heads or tails** //

**by the flip of a coin // on / by the toss of a coin.**

The con man agreed to **flip for** the bill /eE **toss up ( for it )**.

He agreed to **toss ( the inquisitor ) for it**.

**20** As the waiter prepared to **flip / toss a coin** to decide

whether the con man or the inquisitor had to pay the bill,

the inquisitor was allowed to choose **heads or tails**.

When **heads** faced upwards, the inquisitor **lost** the **toss**.

Having **lost over** his **head** in the card game and the **toss**,  
he **reckoned (that)** he hadn't got enough money **on** him.

He **calculated (that)** he hadn't got the money **about** him  
to pay the bill, and was **head over ears in debt**.

He was **over his head (A) in debt**.

The head waiter refused to **give him a temporary `respit**.

**30 Holding / putting a gun to** the inquisitor's **head**,

the waiter suggested that he **gave ( ) up** a precious ring

( **to him** ) as a **pledge / in pledge / as security**.

The inquisitor had to **toss up between giving** the ring **up**  
**voluntarily** or risking trouble.

It was a **toss-up between** the **devil** and the **deep blue sea**  
or between **Scylla** and **Carybdis**.

**Raging like a bear with a sore head**, the **hotheaded**  
- ` -  
inquisitor **handed ( ) over** a precious ring ( **to** the head waiter ).

\* tilkalde ng.

\* overtjener

\* udregne ngt.

\* foretage / gøre >

\* beregning  
udregning

\*

\* gå lige til sagen

\* blive / være kvit

\*

\* snuble over ordene

\* kludre i ...

\* skændes med ng.

\* ~ i vilden sky

\* helt fra koncepterne  
/ ude af den

\* ~ holde lav profil

\* ~gå lige til sagen overfor ng.

\* brushoved

\* udspekuleret  
spidsfindig

\* gående ud på at -

\* krone eller plat ( plat eller krone )

\* slåen plat eller krone

\* slå plat eller krone om ngt.

\* slå ... med ng. om ngt.

\* sende en mønt afsted ( slå plat eller krone )

\*

\* krone eller plat ( plat eller krone )

\* krone

\* tabe plat eller kronen

\* tabt til op over begge ører

\* plat eller kronen

\* regne ud at -

\* på sig

\* =

\* =

\* i gæld til op over begge ører

\*

=

\* ... ng.

\* midlertidig

\* udsættelse

\* sætte ng. en pistol for brystet

\* overdrage ngt. ( til ng.)

\* som ( hånd-) pant

\* i ...

\* som sikkerhed

\* ~ træffe et tilfældigt valg mellem

\* <<

\* frivilligt

\* ~ pest eller kolera

\*

=

\* rase \* som en bjørn med ømt hoved  
( ~ en olm tyr )

\* ubesindig  
hidsig, opfarende

\* overdrage ngt. ( til ng. )

**704** Dead **broke** ( pred. ), the inquisitor **headed for** the door.

**Heading back home**, but unable to **keep** his **balance**, he **swayed**, and **staggered** / **tottered drunkenly** out of the pub.

**Heading for home, stumbling along drunk as a lord**,  
was not only an **uncalculated** risk, it was, in fact,

both an **uncalculable** and an **incalculable** risk.

A **passerby** in the street offered to help the inquisitor,  
but the latter **held** his **head high** and, in his arrogance,  
just **bit** / **snapped** the passerby's **head off**.

**10 Reeling** home, the inquisitor had, when he one time  
**lurched forward, tripped over a cobblestone** /  
or **paving stone at the head / top of** some stairs going down.

He had **tripped** and almost fallen **headfirst**,  
and then **tripped on** the **first steps** of the stairs.

Having **unsteadily tripped down** the next steps,  
he had then **rolled head over heels**,  
**fallen down** the last part of the stairs **headforemost**,  
and finally hit a post **head-on at** the **foot of** the **stairs**.

He tried to **pick** himself **up** but having **knocked** his **head**  
**20 against** the post, he **plunged headlong** into the canal.

Having **hit** his **head**, and been **concussed** by getting  
a **knock on** the **head**, he had lost consciousness.

So he was unable to **keep** his **head above water**.  
and was **heading for** certain death.

**By** ( a **fortunate** ) **coincidence**, a passerby heard  
the **splash**.

Having **rushed off** down to the river to **investigate**,  
he caught sight of the person in distress.

**Intrepidly**, the passerby **plunged headfirst into** the water  
**30 to come to the rescue of the victim of the accident**.

Having **dived** / **jumped headlong into** the water,  
and fought not to **loose** his **grip on** the lifeless body,  
he managed to rescue the inquisitor.

Having **fearlessly** saved him from drowning,  
and brought him, **nothing daunted**, safely to land,  
the rescuer managed to drag the confused inquisitor to  
the rescuer's own home and put him to bed.

**Blind / dead drunk** and probably **with** (A: a ) **concussion**,  
he was lying in a **drunken stupor** in an **unfamiliar** bed.

\* blanket helt af / flad \* styre mod ngt.

\* være på vej hjem \* holde > \* balancen

\* sveje \* slingre, dingle, tumble, vakle \* fordrunkent

\* styre / \* slingre afsted \* fuld som \* ~ en allike  
på vej hjemad  
\* ukalkuleret

\* ukalkulerbar \* umådelig stor

\* forbipasserende

\* ranke sig, være stolt

\* svare kort for hovedet / vredladent

\* tumble ( hjemad )

\* vakle forover \* snuble over ngt. \* ( naturlig afrundet )  
brosten

\* ( tilvirket ... ) øverst på / på toppen af ( trappe )

\* snuble \* med hovedet først

\* snuble på ngt.

\* ~ usikkert, vaklende \* trippe nedad ngt.

\* rulle > \* ~ rundt ( i en koldbøtte )

\* falde ned af ngt. \* med hovedet forrest

\* med hovedet forrest \* ved foden > \* trappen

\* rejse sig / komme på benene \* støde hovedet >  
efter fald

\* mod \* falde \* med hovedet forrest  
styrte

\* slå hovedet \* få hjernerystelse

\* stød \* i hovedet

\* holde hovedet oven vande

\* på vej mod

\* lykketræf

\* plask

\* styrte afsted \* undersøge

\*

\* ufortrødent \* kaste sig > \* på hovedet \* i vandet  
uden tøven

\*

\* hoppe på hovedet

\* løsne grebet i ngt.

\*

\* frygtløs

\* ufortrødent

\*

\*

\* døddrukken

\* med hjernerystelse

\* fordrunken \* sanseløshed

\* fremmed

**705** Having **caught** a **headcold**, and **having** a **high fever**,  
the inquisitor was shaking **from head to `foot / toe**.

The rescuer was worried that he **was concussed**.

Whether he had suffered **head injuries** and had had  
(a) **concussion** ( of the brain ) or suffered from a terrible  
hangover, he woke up with a **bad head**.

His **head** was **throbbing**.

He had a **excruciating / splitting headache**.

The headache **excruciated** him.

**10** His rescuer has his **head screwed on** :  
he has his **head screwed on straight / right / the right way**.

The rescuer **questioned** the person **in / under** his **charge**  
**on** his **movements on** the **night of** the accident.

Although he was reluctant to **confess to** his ignorance,  
the inquisitor must **confess to being** ignorant and knowing  
nothing about how he had ended up like this.

Reluctantly, he **confessed that** he was embarrassed.

‘ I’m embarrassed about it,’ he **confessed**.

Soon after the rescuer realized who was in his custody,

**20** he questions the inquisitor about his **previous history**.

The inquisitor **confessed** himself **bewildered**  
and embarrassed by the rescuer’s explanation.

**Complaining bitterly**, he **confessed to being** a fool.

The inquisitor **poured out** his **troubles to** his rescuer.

He never realized anyone could be so **cunning, sly**  
and **calculating** as the con men.

Having heard the rest of the story behind,  
the rescuer **lectured** the inquisitor **about** his delusions.

‘ **Why beholdest thou the mote that is in thy brother’s**  
**30 eye but considerest not the beam in thine own eye ?** ‘

he asked the inquisitor **reproachfully**, and went on,

‘ You **got into a scrape / scrapes** (o-f), beginning at the pub,  
and only because of me, a heretic **in secrecy** but merciful,  
you **got out of the scrape** alive –

and as far as the inquisition is concerned, instead of  
being an advocate of the Gospel, justice and mercy,  
you have acted as an **officious** inquisitor blinded by  
revengefulness and ambition –

so after all, what gives you the right to **judge** ( anybody ) ? ‘

- \* få snue
- \* fra top til tå
- \* få hjernerystelse
- \* hovedkvæstelser
- \*
- \* hovedpine
- \* hovedet >
- \* pinefuld / dundrende >
- \* pine ng.
- \* være fornuftig og kvik i pæren
- \* =
- \* udspørge ng. >
- \* om ngt. \* bevægelser / færden \* på natten for ngt.
- \* indrømme / vedkende sig ngt.
- \* ... at -
- \*
- \* indrømme at -
- \* indrømme
- \*
- \* forhistorie
- \* indrømme at være + adj.
- \*
- \* klage sin nød
- \* hælde sine problemer ud over / klage sin nød til ng.
- \* snedig
- \* beregnende
- \* udspekuleret
- \*
- \* belære ng. om ngt.
- \* hvorfor ser du splinten ( støvkorn ) i din broders
- \* øje men ( betragter ) ej bjælken i dit eget
- \* fuld af bebrejdelse
- \* komme i knibe
- \* ~ i al hemmelighed / i det skjulte
- \* komme ud af kniben
- \*
- \*
- \* alt for tjenstivrig, emsig
- \* geskæftig, nævenyttig
- \*
- \* dømme ( ng.)
- \* have høj feber
- \* hjernerystelse
- \* dunke
- \* hovedpine
- \* i ngs. varetægt.
- \* på natten for ngt.
- \* underfundig
- \* snu, lusket

**706** Having **lectured** him **on** Christian humanity, tolerance,  
freedom of conscience and religious liberty, the rescuer

**lectured** the inquisitor **about** behaving according to  
Christian mercifulness.

The rescuer had the ability to **hit** the **nail on the `head**.

Although he suffered from a **feverish** cold  
and **had** a **thick head**, the inquisitor was **clear-headed**.

Suffering from a fever and a headache,  
he soon fell into a **feverish** sleep.

**10** In a **feverish** dream, on a **journey into the unknown**,  
the inquisitor was eventually **put to trial** by **demons in Hell**.

**Being in the dock**, and scared of **the unknown**  
he was cross-examined by a **death's head**.

Every time he  **rushed / plunged headfirst into** a defence,  
he **got tied up / entangled in contradictions**.

Every remark just **sent him tumbling headlong into**  
another ( **self-**) **contradiction**.

' I will not forget your lack of Christian charity  
when **your day of reckoning comes**,' the death's head said.

**20** Every time he asked / begged / pleaded for mercy,  
he **entangled** himself **in contradictions**,  
and **knocked** his **head against** a  **`wall**.

Having **knocked** his **head against** a **brick wall**,  
he suddenly **recognized** a person behind the death's head,  
**the son of man who hath not where to lay his head**.

' Will you **have** the heretic's **death on your head** ? '  
Jesus asked.

Feeling a sharp **pang / prick / twinge of conscience**  
the inquisitor **shook** his **head**.

**30** Jesus went on, ' **Their blood be on your head !** '  
' **On your head be it !** '

Being **foremost among(st)** those who condemn heretics,  
the inquisitor **broke out in a cold sweat**.

**Having a nightmare about** eternal perdition,  
he kept **tangling** the bedclothes / E& <covers (  **`up** ).

**Tossing and turning in `torment**, he kept **sarling** ( **() up** ),  
**ruffling**, and **rumbling** the bedclothes.

The bedclothes all **sarled** ( **up** ) and **tangled** ( **up** ).

\* belære / formane ng. om ngt.

\*

\* ... at -

\*

\* slå hovedet på sømmet  
ramme rigtigt med sin mening

\* febril  
febergivende

\* have ondt i hovedet  
/ hovedpine

\* klarhovedet

\*

\* feber- ( søvn )

\* ... ( drøm )

\* rejse ind i >

\* det ukendte

\* sætte ng. på anklagebænken \* dæmon \* i helvedet

\* være i > \* ~ anklageskranken

\* <<

\* dødningshoved

\* kaste sig hovedkulds udi ngt.

\* blive viklet ind i selvmodsigelser

\* sende ng. hovedkulds ind i

\* selvmodsigelse

\*

\* regnskabs dag / din dommedag kommer

\*

\* vikle sig ind i selvmodsigelser

\* støde panden mod en mur

\*

=

\* genkende ng.

\* menneskesønnen ( som ) havde intet steds  
at hvile sit hoved.

\* have ngt. på sin samvittighed

\*

\* ~ anfald af samvittighedskvaler

\* ryste på hovedet

\* hans blod skal komme over dit hoved

\* det er dit ansvar

\* førende / ledende >

\* blandt ng.

\* ~ få koldsved

\* have mareridt om ngt.

\* sammenklumpe / ugle ( sengetøj )

\* vende og dreje sig \* i lidelse

\* - - >

\* krølle >

\* krølle og ugle ( sengetøj )

\* krølles, ugles

\* klumpe sammen / ugles

707 ' A true Christian shows mercy to his fellow beings, '

the Redeemer instructed ( the inquisitor ).

The inquisitor **nodded** his **head** in agreement.

**Entangled** in bedclothes, he woke up from **fits of delirium**  
as a **peal** of a church **bell intruded into** his **dream**.

Waking up at the sound of the bell starting **pealing ( out )**,  
and **in a cold sweat about** the **close encounter**,  
he had a **haunted look** on his face.

The bedcovers were all **sarled ( up )**, **tangled ( up )**,  
**10 ruffled**, and **rumpled**.

In a **tangle of bedlinen**, wet **from head to foot / toe**,  
the inquisitor **leaned ( his back ) against / on** the **bedhead**.

He tried to **collect himself** after his **hideous** nightmare  
but his **conscience pricked** him as he **realized, recognized**  
and **acknowledged that**, blinded by **officiousness**,  
he had been too eager to **control** people.

His **realizarion, recognition, and acknowledgement that**  
he had **officiously** abused his power **pricked** his **conscience**.

**Excruciated** by feelings of guilt, he realized it was time

**20 he got / put his head down**, and **made** some **revision(s)**.

**Tortured** and **tormented** by **pangs of conscience**,  
the inquisitor **hung** his **head in shame**.

Having **extricated** himself **from** the **tangled (up)** sheets,  
he **mopped** his **fevered** brow and promised to be **merciful**.

Having praised his saviour, the inquisitor **promised ( him )**,  
' You can **rest easy ( on that head )** – you may **rest assured**.'

The **headstrong** inquisitor realized that he had been  
a much too **heady** character.

His **heady** conduct had got many people into trouble.

**30** He realized that his **coming unto** the **knowledge of truth**,  
that his **quest for the truth**, for **God's truth, real truth**  
and **eternal truth** had been based **on false premises**.

He realized that he had just blindly accepted whatever  
dogma he was told – he had never thought to **question** it.

The rescuer **raises** the **question of** inquisition: methods  
of **interview, questioning, interrogation, examination**  
and justice.

\*

\* Frelseren

\* instruere / belære ( ng.)

\* nikke med hovedet

\* viklet ind i ng. \* anfald af ng. \* & vildelse

\* kimen af > \* klokke \* trænge ind i > \* drøm

\* kime

\* ( badet ) i koldsved over ng. \* tæt ( farligt ) møde

\* plaget udtryk

\* ( blevet ) uglet, krøllet

\* - = -

\* sammenklumpning \* sengelinned \* fra top til tå

\* læne sig ( ryggen ) op ad ng. \* hovedgærde

\* ~ sunde sig \* hæslig, væmmelig

\* samvittighed nager ng. \* opdage / indse \* = ( at - )  
/ erkende ( at - )

\* indse / erkende at - \* emsighed

\* kontrollere / bestemme over ng.

\* opdagelse / erkendelse ( af at ) \* erkendelse af at -

\* alt for tjenstvirgt, emsig \* nage ens samvittighed  
geskæftigt, nævenyttigt  
\* forpint

\* dukke hovedet \* foretage ( nogle ) forandringer  
holde lavprofil / genovervejelser  
\* pint / \* samvittighedskvaler

\* plaget af  
\* hænge med hovedet \* af skam

\* vikle sig ud af ng. \* sammenklumpet

\* tørre ng. \* barmhjertig  
tilgivende

\* love ( ng. ), ' speech '

\* være rolig ( på det punkt )

\* selvrådig, egensindig  
stivsindet, stædig

\* & ubesindig  
heftig, voldsom

\* =

\* komme til sandheds erkendelse

\* søgen efter sandheden \* guds sandhed \* virkelig ...

\* evig ... \* på > \* falsk \* præmis  
forudsætning

\*

\* betvivle ng.

\* rejse spørgsmålet om

\* ( politi-) forhør \* = \* = \* retsligt forhør

\*

708 As the <b>question of</b> justice and Christian charity	* spørgsmål om ngt.
is <b>foremost in</b> their <b>minds</b> , the inquisitor and his saviour	* ~ optage en ledende plads i ngs. sind
<b>hotly discuss</b> the <b>question of</b> charity.	* ~ ivrigt      * diskutere >      * spørgsmål om ngt.
The rescuer <b>puts</b> new arguments <b>into</b> the inquisitor's <b>head</b> .	* få ng. til at tænke over ngt.
Nothing should <b>put</b> the arguments <b>out of</b> his <b>head</b> .	* få til at glemme ngt.
After his <b>trip</b> on his way home and rescue by a heretic,	* snublen
the Inquisitor has done a lot of <b>headwork</b> .	* tanke arbejde
He realizes he has been a <b>blinded</b> religious <b>fanatic</b> .	* forblændet      * fanatiker
<b>Making a rejection</b> of his previously held <b>fanatical</b> views,	* foretage > * afvisning /      * fanatiske ( synspunkter ) forkastelse af ngt.
10 he admits he has been a <b>malefactor</b> and <b>wrongdoer</b> .	* misdæder, moral- / lovkrænker      * =
' Whether people consider me a <b>turncoat</b> ,	* vendekåbe
<b>that's</b> their <b>headache</b> , ' the inquisitor says –	* det er ngs. egen hovedpine
' <b>that's</b> their <b>private headache</b> , ' he emphasizes.	* =
The rescuer <b>calculates on</b> an acquittal.	* regne med ngt.
He <b>calculates on</b> the inquisitor acquitting the accused.	* ... at ng. gør ngt.
The inquisitor <b>evidences</b> his conversion by promising	* tydeliggøre ngt.
to acquit the condemned prisoner.	*
Even if the inquisitor swears to <b>rectify</b> his <b>wrongdoing(s)</b> ,	* rette op på >      * umoralsk / ulovlig handling
it's an <b>awkward matter / business</b> to trust in his promises.	* besværlig sag sin ( egen ) sag
20 Will the inquisitor <b>put / lay</b> his <b>head / neck on the block</b>	* lægge hovedet på blokken >
<b>for</b> the condemned prisoner ?	* for ng.
Will he <b>withdraw / drop</b> all <b>charges against</b> the convict,	* frafalde >      * anklage mod ng.
and <b>acquit</b> him <b>of</b> heresy and every <b>alleged</b> crime ?	* frikende ng. for ngt.      * påstået
In all cases, inquisitor hurries back to the inquisitorial offices,	*
and makes his way to the torture chamber.	*
Luckily, <b>feeling honour bound to</b> fulfil his promise,	* føle sig forpligtet til at -
the <b>repentant</b> inquisitor orders the accused to be <b>absolved of</b>	* angrende      * løst fra / frikend for ngt.
any charge, guilt and responsibility, and be released.	*
Having a <b>tortured mind</b> , the poor soul hardly <b>grasps</b>	* forpint sind      * begribe >
30 the <b>heady</b> news of his acquittal.	* berusende ( nyhed )
His ordering the condemned man acquitted involves	*
an <b>uncalculable</b> risk for the inquisitor's future career.	* ~ uoverskuelig
Even if it may be an incalculable risk, it's a <b>calculated</b> risk.	* medregnet
It's been an absolute <b>nightmare for</b> the accused.	* mareridt for ng.
He has been going through the <b>nightmare of</b> ( being put /	* ... med ( at ) ngt.
submitted to ) excruciating / gruesome torture.	*
His <b>nightmarish</b> time under <b>nightmarish</b> conditions	* mareridtsagtig
has been every human being's <b>worst nightmare</b> .	* ngs. værste mareridt

**709** About the same time, a ( dead ) body is found in the river. \*

The **coroner holds an inquest into** the person's death.

`ingkwest

\* ligsyns- \* foretage en undersøgelse angående ngt.  
embedsmand ( ~ holde ligsyn )

A **coroner's inquest** is hold to discover the cause of death.

\* ligsyn (-s-undersøgelse )

The **post-mortem ( examination )** E/eA **autopsy** shows

`å-tåpsi

\* ligsyn

that the dead person has been stabbed to death.

\*

Apart from that, the **coroner's court / ( coroner's ) inquest**

\* retsligt ligsyn

hears that the **corpse** has had its **ring finger** cut off.

\* lig

\* ringfinger

( The other figers are : the **thumb**, the **index finger**,

\* tommel-

\* pegefinger

the **middle finger**, and the little finger. )

\* lang-

\* lillefinger

**10** The **scene of the crime bears evidence of** a struggle.

\* gerningssted

\* bære indlysende præg af /

vise tydelige tegn på / give vidnesbyrd om ngt.

It **bears / gives witness to** fierce fighting.

\* =

It **testifies to** a fierce fight.

\* vidne om ngt.

**Bearing testimony of / to** fierce fighting,

`testêmêni E/A - mouni

\* give vidnesbyrd om / vise sikre tegn på ngt.

the **crime scene is a testimony of / to** a fierce fight.

\* gerningssted

\* være et vidnesbyrd om /  
sikker tagn på ngt.

The scene **is a testament to** a fierce fight.

\* - = -

The dead person is identified as the con man.

\*

**Multiple enjuries to** the body **are a testimony of / to //**

\* mange

\* kvæstelse

\* vidnesbyrd om / bevis på >

**a testament to** fierce fighting.

\* - - - ngt.

A **life-and-death struggle** has taken place,

\* kamp på liv og død

**20 as evidenced by** multiple injuries.

\* som bevidnet / (det) fremgår af ngt.

The exact time of death is still an **open question**.

\* åbent spørgsmål

The police **launch** a murder inquiry / **investigation**.

\* iværksætte ... undersøgelse

Having **launched** an **investigation / inquiry into**

\* ... af ngt.

the murder, the police start **investigating**.

\* undersøge

Initially, the investigation provides little **enlightenment**

\* klarhed

about the murder, so while **investigating** the murder,

\* undersøge ngt.

the police **appeal for witnesses to** the crime.

\* efterlyse vidner til ngt.

The police appeal for **eyewitnesses to come forward**.

\* komme frem

~ melde sig

They **appeal for** everyone who has **witnessed** anything

\* appellere til ng. >

\* være vidne til ngt.

**30 in connection with the murdered man to come forward**

\* myrdet

\* < om at

\* melde sig

( **with** information ).

\* med ngt.

A lot of witnesses **help** the **police with** their **interviews /**

\* hjælpe politiet med >

\* afhøring ( u. sigtelse )

**E& inquiries / enquiries.**

in`kwaiêriz

\* =

Having **inquired** their name, occupation and address,

\* ( fore- ) spørge om ngt.

the police **inquire what** people have **witnessed**.

\* forhøre sig om hvxx

\* være vidne til ngt.

They **inquire who** they have seen and **inquire where**

\* =

and **when** they have seen anything **suspect / suspicious**.

\* =

\* mistænkeligt



<b>711 Testifying for the prosecution, a queer shabby-looking customer (o-f) appears as (a) witness for the prosecution.</b>	* vidne for > * anklageren * underlig * sølle udseende ~ lurvet * fyr * optræde som > * vidne for ( anklageren )
<b>In his testimony, the prosecution witness testifies ( that )</b>	* i ... vidneforklaring * anklagerens vidne * bevidne / forklare at -
he has <b>witnessed</b> the murder, and <b>questionably</b> claims	* være vidne til * tvivlsomt betvivleligt
to have seen the accused at the scene of the crime.	*
<b>Turning King's / Queen's / A State's evidence,</b>	* vidne mod ng. for selv at få en mildere straf
the witness seems a man of <b>questionable</b> character.	* tvivlsom
<b>One questions whether</b> he's telling the truth.	* man må stille spørgskålstegn ved om - / tvivle på at -
' I have been at the pub all the time,' the defendant <b>testifies.</b>	* bevidne, forklare
<b>10</b> The inquisitor appears as (a) <b>witness for the defence.</b>	* vidne for forsvaret
As a <b>defence witness</b> , he <b>testifies ( that )</b> the head waiter	* = * bevidne / forklare at -
had <b>come into possession of</b> the ring <b>by legal means.</b>	* komme i besiddelse af ngt. * på legal / lovlig vis
<b>Testifying for</b> the defence, several witnesses <b>testify</b> (that)	* vidne for ng.
the head waiter has been at the pub at he time of the murder.	* bevidne / forklare at -
So the defendant's claim is supported by the <b>testimony</b>	* ( vidne-) forklaring
of several witnesses.	*
The defence now <b>cross-ex`amine</b> the witness who	* krydsforhøre ng.
<b>testified against</b> the head waiter.	* vidne mod ng.
An <b>odour of suspicion</b> now surrounds this witness and his	* et anstrøg af mistanke
<b>20</b> testimony as it seems he <b>has no tenable evidence to</b>	* have holdbart bevismateriele til at -
<b>support</b> his <b>allegation against</b> the head waiter.	* understøtte > * beskyldning mod ng.
There is, however, <b>convincing evidence of</b> a link between	* overbevisende * tegn på / vidnesbyrd om ngt.
the witness and the con man's female ( fellow ) conspirator.	*
The defence <b>finds further evidence for</b> this theory.	* finde yderligere bevis for ngt.
The witness's honesty is <b>in question.</b>	* tvivlsom
After a long time <b>under cross-exami`nation,</b> the witness	* under krydsforhør
breaks down and <b>confesses / makes a confession.</b>	* tilstå / komme med en tilståelse
Having <b>withdrawn</b> his <b>testimony,</b> he admits to have	* trække sit vidneudsagn tilbage
<b>given (a) false testimony,</b> but explains still to have	* afgive ( en ) falsk vidneforklaring
<b>30 been (a) witness to a brutal</b> murder.	* være vidne til ngt. * brutal
The court has an <b>eyewitness account / testimony.</b>	* øjenvidneberetning
He was shocked by the violent scenes he had <b>witnessed.</b>	* være vidne til ngt.
<b>The question is</b> who and what he had <b>witnessed,</b>	* spørgsmålet er * =
and why he has <b>committed perjury.</b>	* begå > * mened
<b>In answer to</b> the <b>question as to</b> why he had committed	* som svar på ngt. * spørgsmålet om hvxx
perjury, he explains that he has been threatened and <b>bribed</b>	* bestikke ng. >
by the con man's former conspirator <b>into diverting suspicion</b>	* til at - * lede mistanken væk > aflede ...
<b>away from</b> her and <b>into diverting suspicion to</b> head waiter	* fra ng. * henlede / kaste mistanke på ng.
by <b>throwing suspicion on</b> him.	* =

**712** Further investigation **bears / gives witness to the fact**  
**that** the woman in question is a **robber and murderer**.

Charged of **murder with intent to rob**,  
 she is wanted by the police all over the country.

As a **person who** has **murdered with intent to rob**,  
 she faces death sentence if she's ever caught.

The head waiter is **absolved of** all charges and released  
 when the judge rules there is no **evidence against** him.

There is **not a scrap / shred of evidence that**  
**10** the head waiter had anything to do with the crime.

The **question arises as to** whether or not  
 the **murderess** (o-f) had **done** it **single-handed**.

Had she **done** it **on** her **own** and **done** it all **by herself** ?

Together with the **key question of** what caused the **clash**  
**between** the con man and his co-conspirator,  
 many **questions remain unanswered**.

\*

\*

\*

**20**

\* vidne om > \* det faktum >  
 \* at > \* røver \* morder  
 ~ rovmorder  
 \* rovmord  
 \*  
 \* & rovmorder  
 \*  
 \* frikendt for ngt.  
 \* bevis ( -materiale ) mod ng.  
 \* ikke en stump / et gran / en tøddel / af bevis for at -  
 \*  
 \* spørgsmålet opstår om hvorvidt  
 \* morderske \* gøre ngt. på egen hånd  
 være alene om ngt.  
 \* =  
 \* ~ vigtig > \* spørgsmål om ngt. \* sammenstød  
 \* mellem ng.  
 \* spørgsmål \* forblive ubesvaret  
 stå ... hen

**713** In the meantime, the head office in Rome **receives information on** the **recent** inquisition.

Having **obtained information about** the local inquisitor's **discharge of** his official / office **duties**, the head office **writes inquiring further about** the inquisition **in question**.

**There is no question of** the head Inquisitor in Rome **taking** a very **serious look at** the matter.

Having **looked at** the **question of** the unusual course of an inquisition, the head office **holds an inquest on** the matter.

**10** It **holds an inquest into** why the local inquisition had suddenly changed its **course of action**.

**The question is:** should it **order** an **inquiry** or not ?

**To all appearances and by all accounts,**  
**there is no question of** an inquiry being ordered.

It decides to **launch an inquiry into** the affair.

The head office sends an **envoy to set up a committee of inquiry** in order to **set up** a judicial **inquiry**.

The committee will **hold an inquiry into** the inquisitor's **discharge of** his **obligations**, and **look into** his **official acts**,

**20** i.e. **actions performed in** his **official capacity**.

The **emissary** from Rome **inquires after** the inquisitor and the assessors.

So the committee **holds an inquiry into** the **reason why** the local inquisition had **departed from** normal procedure.

The **question** which needs to be **addressed** is one of **suitability**.

The inquisitor's efficiency and intelligence have so far been **beyond question**.

The local inquisitor **takes for granted that**

**30** his version of events is accepted **without question**.

**At the time of** his **employment**, he was by far the best candidate, **there's no question about** that.

He was, **without question**, the best candidate.

Nobody **questioned who** had been the best candidate

**There is no question that** he has, so far, **come up to** the **expectations** of the head office.

\* modtage / få >

\* ... om ngt.

\* nyligt afholdt

\* opnå ... om ngt.

\* opfyldelse / udførelse af > \* ( embeds- / ...- ) pligter

\* skrive og - \* forhøre sig om ngt. \* ~ omtalte som det drejer sig om

\* ... ingen tvivl om at -

\* anlægge et > \* alvorligt \* syn på ngt. ( ~ se meget alvorligt på sagen )

\* se på spørgsmålet / problemet om ngt.

\* afholde en retslig undersøgelse om ngt.

\* afholde en undersøgelse vedrørende -

\* handlingsforløb

\* spørgsmålet er \* beordre / kræve > \* høring

\* efter alt at dømme \* = ( som det ser ud / hvad der siges )  
\* ingen tvivl om ngt.

\* iværksætte > \* høring vedrørende ngt.

\* udsending \* oprette / nedsætte > \* komite

\* høring \* = \* høring

\* afholde en høring vedrørende ngt.

\* se nærmere på / undersøge ngt.

\* embedshandling / -pligt \* = \* i embeds medfør pl. -førelse

\* udsending \* spørge efter ng.

\*

\* afholde en høring vedrørende > \* årsagen til hvorfor

\* afvige fra ngt.

\* spørgsmål \* tage fat på ngt.  
problem

\* egetnethed

\*

\* udenfor tvivl

\*

\* uden tvivl

\* & i sin tid

\* ... ingen tvivl om ...

\* uden tvivl

\* sætte spørgsmålstegn ved hvxx

\* der hersker ikke tvivl om at \* leve op til >

\* ngs. forventninger

714 Now his suitability for the job is **open to question**.

Whether he's suitable for the job is an **open question**.

Looking **inquiringly** at the inquisitor,

the envoy **inquires why** he had **deviated from**

his **official duties**, and **diverged from official policy**.

**Raising an inquiring eyebrow** towards the inquisitor

the envoy **inquires** the reason for his **deviation(s)**,

**divergence(s)** and **departure(s) from official procedure(s)**.

'Why have you **departed from** normal **procedure**,'

10 the envoy **inquires ( of him )**.

The inquisitor's account of events **calls / brings / throws**

**Christian charity into question**.

The case **calls / brings / throws into question**

religious liberty and freedom / liberty of conscience.

The committee seem unable to follow the inquisitor's

**line of argument**.

An **inquirer** of the committee **picks up and pursues**

another **line of inquiry / questioning**.

The inquisitor becomes **entangled in** a series of religious

20 and political **conflicts with** the committee.

In the end, the committee refuses to accept the inquisitor's

**line of reasoning**.

The envoy also **inquires into** the inquisitor's private affairs.

Finding the inquisitor guilty of **misconduct ( in office )**,

the committee reports to the head office.

Threatening to **give** the local inquisitor **notice**

in case of any future **abuse of office**, the head office

**lets him off / dismisses him with a caution**.

Feeling a **prick of anxiety / unease / uneasiness**,

30 the local inquisitor **accepts** the **caution without question**.

The inquisitor **groans under** the **wearisome burden of**  
earthly existence.

\* ~ åben for debat

\* et åbent spørgsmål

\* spørgende

\* spørge om hvxx \* afvige fra ngt.

\* ~ embedspligt \* afvige fra \* officiel politik

\* løfte et > \* spørgende \* øjenbryn

\* spørge om > \* afvigelse(r)

\* = \* = \* ~ embeds ...

\* afvige fra ngt. \* & fremgangsmåde

\* spørge ( ng. )

\* kalde / bringe // kaste >

\* kristen \* velgørenhed \* til debat // ind i debatten  
~ næstekærlighed

\* & sætte spørgsmålstegn ved

\*

\*

\* argumentsrække  
resonnement

\* spørger \* ~ vælge \* ( for-) følge

\* afhørings- / udspørgnings- { kurs / metode

\* viklet ind i

\* konflikt / uoverstemmelse med ng.

\*

\* resonnement

\* spørge indtil ngt.  
forhøre sig nærmere om ngt.  
\* embedsmisbrug

\*

\* give ng. sin afsked

\* embedsmisbrug

\* lade ng. slippe med en advarsel

\* stik af > \* uro, bekymring \* = \* =  
ængstelse

\* acceptere > \* advarsel \* uden at stille spørgsmål  
/ tøven

\* stønne, \* slidsomme \* byrde af >  
~ vande sig under >

\* jordisk \* tilværelse

**715 Inspired** by his religious visions, and provoked by the head office's **admonition(s)** and **injunction(s)**, the inquisitor feels an urge to **witness**.

In spite of the head office's warnings, he starts to **witness to** his religious **visions** and **revelations**.

As a **witness** and **reformed** Christian, he speaks publicly about his **reformed** Christian belief.

When the local editor **headlines** the article about the inquisitor's **disobedience** and **insubordination**,  
dis`êbi~djêns  
**10** he makes a two-line **head**.

So when the inquisitor **is in / hits** the **headlines**, he really **makes / grabs** ( the ) **headlines**.

The readers **make** a lot of **inquiries**.

**Getting / receiving** a **delicate inquiry** ( from the bishop )  
`delikê  
( **about** the **delicate matter** ), the editor **is asked** a **delicate questions** about his attitude to the case.

When many opponents of inquisition have seen the **heading**, and read the article, they **head for** the inquisitor's home.

The inquisitor **is greeted with** a thunderous **ovation**.  
**20** **Receiving** an **ovation** of this kind, the inquisitor **quits** further **doubt**.

He can't **go on being** an inquisitor; **it's out of the question**.

He wants to **give** ( his ) **notice**, and **quit** his work.

So he simply decides to **quit**, and **seek pastures new**.

So as he decides to **quit** office, and **quit himself of** his **past**, he **hands`in** his **notice / resignation**.

When he **quits** working, his colleagues **shake** their **head** and call him a **quitter** who just **seeks greener pastures**.

As a **representative of** the Catholic Church,  
**30** the inquisitor's **landlord gives** him **notice to quit**.

The ex-inquisitor's **quest for** knowledge, **the truth** and happiness within the church has come to an end.

Having **got notice to quit**, the ex-inquisitor decides to **fulfil** a **long-nourished desire** to **journey**  
`nûri\$d /A& `nê~  
**in quest for** adventure, knowledge, **truth** and happiness.

Before he **sets off**, and **moves on to pastures new** **in quest of** adventure, knowledge, some **truths** and happiness, he **pays off** his **debts** to be **quits** ( **with** everybody ).

\* inspireret > \* vision, drømmesyn  
\* formaning \* irettesættelse  
\* vidne ( ~ om religiøse oplevelser )  
\*  
\* give vidnesbyrd om ngt. \* syn \* åbenbaring  
\* religiøst vidne vision \* reformert  
\* reformeret  
\* sætte overskrift på ngt.  
\* opsætsighed  
\* overskrift  
\* komme i overskriften  
blive dagens sensation  
\* =  
\* komme med ... forespørgsel  
\* få ... forespørgsel ( fra ng.)  
\* ( om ngt. ) \* ømtålelig sag \* blive stillet  
\* ... spørgsmål om ngt.  
\* overskrift  
\* styre mod ngt.  
\* blive hilst / modtaget med > \* klapsalve  
\* modtage > \* =  
\* opgive > \* tvivl  
\* ~ fortsætte med at - \* ~ det er udelukket  
\* tage sin afsked \* holde op med ngt.  
\* skride fra det hele \* søge > \* nye græsgange  
\* sige sin stilling op \* befri sig for > \* fortid  
\* indgive sin opsigelse  
\* holde op med at gøre ngt. \* ryste på hovedet  
\* person, der forlader \* søge > \* grønnere \* græs-  
et ufuldendt arbejde \* representant for ngt. gange  
\* give ng. besked om at fraflytte  
sige ng. op  
\* søgen efter ngt. \* sandheden  
\*  
\* få besked om at fraflytte  
blive sagt op  
\* opfylde > \* længe næret \* behov ( for at ) \* rejse  
\* i søgen efter ngt. \* sandhed  
\* tage af sted \* komme videre til nye græsgange  
\* << \* sandheder  
\* betale ngt. ud \* gæld \* være kvit \* med ng.

**716** There **was** a **question mark over** the Catholic Church.

A big **question mark hung over** the Catholic Church.

The Roman Catholic Church **witnessed** an increase in religious protests.

Those times **witnessed** a period of religious **upheaval** and some countries **witnessed** a religious reformation.

**Bearing testimony of / to** the success of the **upheavals** the growing number of Protestants **was a testament to** the religious **disruption(s)**.

**10** Nevertheless, quite few in the Vatican probably foresaw the **propinquity / proximity** of the Church **to** a separation, and the **propinquity / proximity of** the Protestant Churches.

The numerous political and religious conflicts in Europe during the **Thirty Years War** ( 1618 – 48 ) is a **testimony to** the **tangled web** of political and religious beliefs.

In the final **reckoning**, the Inquisition failed to achieve its goals as the Protestants during the Reformation in the 16th century succeeded in establishing the Protestant Churches in Northern Europe.

**20** Religious **calculations** often **entangle with** political calculations whether concerning power or wealth.

As political as well as religious leaders usually try to **manoeuvre** their **way to** the top of the **tangled web** of politics, they often **become / get entangled in** conflicts whether concerning **tangible** or **intangible** aims.

So political and religious **entanglement** is usually a **tangled (up)** affair.

Human beings continually **quest for** happiness, **bodily** as well as **spiritual satisfaction**.

**30** Some people have a **blinkered approach to** life.

**Having blinkers on** when it comes to certain subjects, they need to **have a fresh look at** their life, **without blinkers**.

Religious doctrines and dogmatism for ages **trammelled** the **quest for** knowledge and freedoms / liberties.

Eventually, in the ( **Age of** ) **Enlightenment**, a philosophical movement in the 17th and 18th centuries characterized by belief in human reason, the quest for happiness was liberated from the **trammels** (pl.) of religious and political doctrines.

\* ~ der herskede stor usikkerhed omkring ngt.

\* =

\* være vidne til ngt,

\*

\* være vidne til ngt. \* omvæltning

\* =

\* bringe vidnesbyrd om ngt.

\* være et ... om ngt.

\* afbrydelse, forstyrrelse, sammenbrud, opløsning

\*

\* ngs. nærhed til ngt.

\* ... af ngt.

\*

\* tredveårskrigen \* vidne om ngt.

\* indviklet \* net  
( ~ sammensurium )

\* når regnskabet gøres op

\*

\*

\*

\* beregning \* vikle sig sammen med ngt.

\*

\*

\* manøvrere sig vej til ngt. \* indviklet

\* vikle ng. ind i

\* håndgribelig \* u-...

\* forvikling, komplikation  
vanskelighed

\* indviklet  
speget

\* søge efter ngt.

\* legemlig / åndelig tilfredsstillelse

\* ~ snæversynet > \* indfaldsvinkel til ( livet )

\* have skyklapper på

\* få > \* ~ fornyet syn på ngt. \* uden skyklapper

\* hindre ngt.

\* søgen efter ngt.

\* oplysningstiden

\*

\* oplysningstiden

\* snærende bånd

# THE INQUISITOR'S NEW LIFE

717 Towards the **head of a pier**, as chance would have it,  
the ex-inquisitor **gets into conversation with** a woman.

It's a **heavenly** morning, and **tripping** along by his side,  
she's wearing a skirt with a **slight flare**.

Her hair is arranged in a charming **headdress**,  
and he's already **carried away** by her **heady** `perfume.

His **mouth twitches slightly** before he tells her about  
the **profound consequence** of his **trip** down the stairs.

She listens to him with a **heady** feeling.

10 He **reckons (that)** she'll agree to see him again.

The ex-inquisitor **falls head over heels in love**.

The **object of his choice** is **head over heels in love with**  
him too, and for the first time, the ex-inquisitor fully realizes  
that he has, in fact, all his life foolishly been **repressing**  
any **desire to quest for** an **earthly** partner of his life.

His **quest of a heavenly** partner of his life, has only been  
a **substitute for the quest for** the earthly partner of his life.

Having a **heavenly** feeling for his companion, he tells her  
his name is Theodosius but he would like her to call him Theo.

20 Her name is Dora – Theodora, what a coincidence.

**Twitching** his **eyebrows**, Theo **inquires about** her family.

She tells him that she's a widow living with relatives  
of dear **propinquity / proximity**.

They live on a farm **in the east ( the East )**, not too far from  
a village **in an eastern rural county / district / parish**  
**in the eastern part of the country, ( northern / southern )**  
`nåden `såden  
actually the **eastermost** part of the country.

The village is situated ( **to the** ) **east of / further east than**  
the **headland**, on the **east** and **west** bank further up the river

30 They live **in close propinquity / proximity to** the wilds  
**in the propinquity of the eastern** mountains,

**in the proximity of the eastern** slopes ( slopes facing **east** )  
and the **western headsprings / headwaters** (pl.) of the river.

Although there are no neighbours **in the immediate vicinity**,  
and not too far from civilisation.

The relative **propinquity / proximity of the farm to**  
a **country road**, and the village at the navigable river  
makes it **practicable** to reach.

* hoved ende	* anløbsbro mole
* falde i snak med	
* himmelsk, ~ vidunderlig	* træde / danse yndefuldt
* let, ~ an anelse >	* udvidelse mod kanten
* frisure	
* blive beruset	* berusende
* mund >	* fortrække sig
* ~ vidtrækkende	* følger
* berusende ( følelse )	* snublen, fald
* regne med at -	
* ~ forelske sig til op over begge ører	
* ngs. udkårne	* forelsket - - - i ng.
*	
* undertrykke >	*
* trang til at - * søge efter >	* jordisk ( ~ livsledsager )
* søgen efter >	* himmelsk ( = )
* erstatning for ngt.	* søgen efter ngt.
* himmelsk, ~ vidunderlig ( følelse )	
*	
*	
* trække på >	* øjenbrynene
	* forhøre sig / ( fore-) spørge om ngt.
*	
* ( & ånds- ) beslægtet nærhed	
* ~ i den østlige del af landet	
* østligste	* landkommune / -distrikt / -landsogn
* i den østlige del af landet	
* østligste	
* øst for / længere øst end >	
* forbjerg	* øst
	* vest
* i umiddelbar nærhed af ngt.	
* i nærheden af ngt.	* østlig
* =	* østvendt
	* mod øst
* vestliggende	* udspring
	* øvre løb udspring
* i den nærmeste omegn / umiddelbar nærhed	
*	
* nærhed af ngt. til ngt	
* landevej	
* praktisk mulig overkommelig	

**718** The ex-inquisitor would have **asked** more **questions**,  
but he doesn't want to **seem inquisitive to** her.

As Dora is on her way back home, and the ship is  
about to sail, they have to say goodbye.

Having solemnly promised to come and see her as soon as  
possible, Theo can't help **popping** the **question**.

**Colour flares in their cheeks.**

He gets no answer but a passionate kiss.

Theo's **lips twitch with** excitement as his brain

**10** is **teeming with** a whole **tangle of** emotions and ideas.

As he hasn't ( got ) any **family**, he imagines the sound of  
little children's **playful** voices, and **trips of frisky** little feet.

Before **quitting for good**, the former inquisitor  
writes an important note in ten **heads**.

He strikes the **head** of a nail with the **head** of a hammer  
as he fastens the note on the church door.

In the **heading** at the **head** of the paper it **reads**,  
' **Quit** inquisition ! '

Each **head** is a protest against religious oppression.

**20** The church square is soon **teeming with** people.

As it starts **teeming with** rain, most people **seek shelter /**  
**cover ( from the rain ) in the vicinity** of the church.

**Running for shelter, running for the shelter of** something,  
some people **find / take shelter under** roofs and **eaves** (pl.).

Crowds are gathering **in** or **under the shelter of** anything.

A tree only **gives** temporary **shelter from** the rain.

**Seeking into shelter, seeking the shelter of** the church,  
**seeking into the shelter of** the church, they **find / take {**  
**shelter / cover in the porch and in** the church.

**30** While **in the lee of** the church,  
the ex-inquisitor looks for a cab to take him to the harbour.

A sailor casts off the **moorings, head and stern**.

The sailor wears a pair of **flares / E& flared trousers**.

Having turned **eastward(s)**, the ship is **heading for** a port  
at the **head** of the **firth / fjord / fiord**.  
fjå~d

Their **heading** is **eastward**. ( **north>**, **west>**, **southward** )

**Heading in an easterly / eastward** direction,

( **northerly / westerly / southerly** direction )  
nåđêli såđêli  
they sail **eastward(s)**.

\* stille ... spørgsmål

\* ~ virke > \* spørgelysten, videbegærlig \* overfor ng.  
nysgerrig, nyfigen

\*

\*

\*

\* ~ lade spørgsmålet ( om ægteskab ) falde / ~ fri

\* farve flammer op på ngt. kinderne  
~ ngs. kinder får farve

\*

\* læbe >

\* lave en trækning af ngt.

\* myldre / vrimle med >

\* sammenfiltrering  
~ virvar ( af følelser )

\* børn

\* muntre, kåde  
( ~ småbørnsstemmer )

\* trippen

\* livlige, kåde  
( fødder )

\* skride fra det hele

\* afsnit

\* hoved

\* =

\*

\* overskrift \* ~ øverst på ( papiret ) \* ~ står der >

\* hold op med ngt.

\*

\* myldre / vrimle med ng.

\* ~ regne tæt

\* søge ly  
/ beskyttelse

\* ... dække ( for ngt. )

\* i området omkring ngt.

\* løbe efter ly

\* ... af ngt.

\* finde ly /  
tage beskyttende ophold under ngt.

\* tagudhæng

\* i / under ly af ngt.

\* give ly / beskyttelse for ngt.

\* søge ind i ly

\* søge ly / beskyttelse i ngt.

\* søge i ly i ngt.

\* finde / tage >

\* ly / beskyttende ophold i ngt.

\* dørøverdække

\* i læ af ngt.

\*

\* fortøjning

\* for, -stavn

\* agter, stavn

\* trompetbukser

\* mod øst

\* have kurs mod ngt.

\* øvre ende

\* ( klippe-) fjord ( især Skotland / Norge etc. )

\* kurs

\* østlig

mod øst

( \* nordlig

\* vestlig

\* sydlig

mod nord

mod vest

mod syd

\* østlig

\* styre

\* nordlig

\* vestlig

\* sydlig

\* østpå

<b>719</b> In spite of a <b>head current</b> and ( a heavy ) <b>head swell</b> ,	* modstrøm ( kraftig )	* frontal	* bølgegang
the ship <b>gathers headway</b> as it <b>heads eastward(s)</b> .	* få fart på fremad	* styre	* mod øst
Sailing <b>windward</b> , they sail <b>head to</b> wind, and <b>head to</b> sea.	* mod vinden	* med stavnen lige mod ngt.	
As they sail <b>on</b> the <b>wind</b> (< <b>ward</b> ) <b>side of</b> the mountains,	* på vindsiden af ngt.		
and sail <b>head up against</b> the <b>wind</b> , a chilly <b>east</b> (< <b>erly</b> ) <b>wind</b> ,	* krydse op mod vinden		* østenvind
the ship <b>makes</b> good <b>headway</b> in the <b>headwind</b> and <b>head sea</b> .	* have fart på fremad	* modvind	* næse- / stampesø
The <b>mainsail</b> and <b>headsail</b> are <b>tight so</b> the ship <b>makes</b>	* storsejl	* forsejl	* stramt
<b>head</b> even if it <b>heads</b> the <b>waves</b> / hits the waves <b>head-`on</b>	* komme frem	* ramme bøljerne med stavnen	
Sailing <b>on</b> the <b>lee</b> (< <b>ward</b> ) <b>side of</b> the mountains, the ship	* på læsiden af ngt.		
<b>10</b> doesn't <b>make</b> much <b>headway</b> in the <b>lee of</b> the mountains.	* få meget fart på fremad		* i læ af ngt.
As the wind <b>falls</b> , the ship <b>makes little</b> or <b>no headway</b> .	* løje af	* få kun lidt / ingen ...	
In the winter when the coast was hit by <b>heady winds</b> ,	* kraftigt pågående >		* vind (-e)
a ship had struck a rock <b>head-on</b> .	* frontalt		
As the <b>head</b> of the <b>ship</b> was crushed against	* bov		
the <b>head</b> of a rock, the ship was <b>condemned</b> .	* fremspring		* dømt til ophugning
A <b>barge</b> takes him towards the <b>head</b> / <b>source</b> of the river	* flodbåd		* udspring
where there's a small town not far from his destination.	*		
A <b>driver</b> is <b>harnessing</b> his horse with <b>headgear</b> ,	* give ngt. seletøj på	* hovedtøj	
mainly consisting of the <b>bridle</b> or <b>halter</b>	* grime		
<sup>`braidl</sup>			
<b>20</b> which consists of the <b>headstall</b> , the <b>bit</b> and the <b>rein(s)</b> .	* hovedstol	* bidsel	* tøjle (-r), tømme (-r)
A headstall may be provided with <b>blinkers</b> /A& <b>blind</b> ers.	* skyklapper		
The rest of the <b>harness</b> , <b>leather straps</b> and metal pieces,	* seletøj	* læder	* rem
are put around the horse's body to fasten it to the carriage.	*		
Having <b>bid</b> / <b>bidden</b> ( the driver ) <b>good afternoon</b> ,	* byde ( ng. ), ~ sige > ( til ng. )	* god ( eftermid- ) dag	
Theo inquires about a <b>lift</b> . ( He <b>bade</b> / <b>bid</b> ( the driver ) - = - ).	* kørelighed	* bød / ~ sagde - = -	
' <b>Where are you headed</b> ( <b>for</b> )? ' the driver asks.	* på vej hen		
The driver uses the <b>rein</b> to <b>control</b> the horse.	* tøjle, tømme	* ~ styre ( hest )	
Saying a special sound, and moving the <b>loose</b> / <b>slack rein</b>	* løs	* tøjle, tømme	
up and down quickly, he gives the horse the signal to walk.	*		
<b>30</b> At the country road, the driver gives the horse the signal	*		
to <b>trot</b> ; the horse <b>instantaneously</b> <b>breakes into a trot</b> .	* trave	* øjeblikkelig straks	* slå over i trav
<sup>instèn`teiniêsl</sup>			
The driver <b>heads</b> the carriage <b>for</b> the <b>homestead</b> .	* styre ngt. mod ngt.		* bondegård
As the driver <b>gives</b> the horse <b>the</b> / <b>its head</b> , it <b>instantly</b>	* ~ give ng. frie tøjler		* øjeblikkelig straks
starts to <b>trot along</b> the country road <b>at a brisk trot</b> .	* trave udad ngt.		* i ( rask ) trav
If frightened, a horse may instinctively <b>bolt</b> .	* løbe løbsk		
<sup>-`st-</sup>			
It may start to <b>canter</b> or <b>gallop</b> , and run away <b>at a canter</b>	* ~ løbe i kort gallop	* gallopere	* i let gallop
or <b>at a gallop</b> even if the driver <b>pulls on</b> / <b>back</b> the <b>reins</b> .	* i gallop	* trække i tøjlerne / tømme	
Having reached their destination <b>at a smart trot</b> ,	* i rask trav		
the driver <b>reins</b> ( ) <b>back</b> / <b>in</b> the <b>horse</b> to make it stop.	* ~ trække i hestens tøjler		

**720** Theo is **bid welcome** by Dora, her brother and sister.

\* byde ng. velkommen

As Dora **shows** Theo (**a**)**round**, he looks and **peeps**

\* vise ng. rundt

\* smugkigge

**inquisitively** at everything.

\* nysgerrigt

The old farm has a **tangible** as well as an **intangible** quality of a **homely** E/eA **hom(e)y** atmosphere; it has both **tangible**

\* håndgribelig

\* uhåndgribelig

and **intangible properties** of **homeliness** E/eA **homeyness**.

\* egenskaber  
kvaliteter

\* hjemlighed / hjemlighed

Finding the place **heavenly**, Theo **carried away** by both

\* himmelsk

\* blive revet med af >

the **tangibly** and **intangibly** homely E/eA **hom(e)y** **feel of** it.

\* håndgribelig

\* u-...

\* ~ præg over ngt.

Very soon his attention is attracted to a **burial plot**

\* gravsted

**10** with a **gravestone / headstone** at the **head** of the **grave**.

\* gravsten

\* hovedenden

\* grav

Dora explains, ' My husband and my parents are buried

\*

here as when he was **escorting** them ( **to** their new home )

\* ledsage ng. ( til ngt.)

years ago, their boat **was swallowed up** by the **boiling** waves.

\* blive opslugt af >

\* skummende ( bølger )

Being **widowed**, and having to face **widowhood**,

\* gøre til enke  
( & enkemand )

\* enkestand

I had to take care of two **orphans**.

\* forældreløst barn

' **Being orphaned**, I, my **orphan** little brother and little sister,

\* blive gjort forældreløs

\* forældreløs

faced **orphanage / <hood**, and as a **widowed** wife, I had to

\* forældreløshed

\* enkebleven

struggle not to send them to an **orphan home / orphanage**.'

\* hjem for forældreløse børn

Dora **shows** Theo (**a**)**round** /eE **over** the **farmhouse**.

\* vise ng. rundt i ngt.

\* stuehuset

**20** The old house has doors with quite little **headroom / headway / clearence** ) which is the clear vertical space

\* frihøjde

( & loftshøjde på loft eller mellem skibsdæk )

\* =

between the **head** of a **doorway** or **door frame**

\* toppen / overkant af >

\* døråbning

\* dørkarm

and the **threshold** or **sill** of the **doorway**

\* dørtærskel

\* dørtrin

\* døråbning

So when he passes a doorway, he has to **bend** his **head**

\* døråbning

\* bøje hovedet  
/ sit hoved

to pass under the head of the doorway.

\*

If he doesn't **bow** his **head**, he'll **hit** his **head**.

\* bøje ...

\* slå ...

Dora, certainly a **homely** (E) woman, wants Theo to be

\* husmoderlig ( A ~ uattraktivt udseende )

the **head of** the house and the **head of** the family.

\* husets overhoved

\* familieoverhoved

He's happy to do his **head-of-the-family** duties, and even if

\* overhoved

**30** he used to consider **menial** work to **stultify** the mind,

\* tjenestefolks-  
tyende-

\* gøre grin med /

the ex-inquisitor **throws** himself wholeheartedly **into** all kinds

\* gå i lag lag med ngt.

være en hån mod ngt.

of **menial** jobs and tasks.

\* <<

He's quick at learning **fieldwork**, **feeding** and **milking**

\* markarbejde

\* fodring

\* malkning

as well as he's quick to **clear** ( ) **away** the **dung**

\* rydde ngt. væk

\* dyrelort

( = muge ud )

as he **cleans** ( ) **out** / **mucks** ( ) **out** the **stable**

\* muge ud i ngt.

\* hestestald

and the **cowshed / cowhouse** /A **cowbarn**.

\* kostald

When he **takes / has** an **after-dinner nap**

\* tage / få sig >

\* middagslur

or an **afternoon nap**, the cat always takes a nap

\* eftermiddags-

either at the **head** or at the **foot of** the bed.

\* hovedenden

\* fodenden

<b>721</b> Having a <b>multifarious livestock</b> for ( livestock- ) <b>rearing</b> ,	* mangeartet	* husdyrhold	* ( husdyr-) opdræt / avl
the farm has a <b>stock</b> of many kinds of domestic animals,	* =	besætning	
among them 10 <b>head</b> of <b>dairy cattle</b> and 20 head of sheep.	* stykker		* malkekvæg
Anger and fear <b>flare</b> a bulls nostrils.	* vide ngt. ud		
When its nostrils <b>flare</b> , a bull is not an animal you'd care	* vide sig ud		
to <b>tangle with</b> .	* komme i klammeri med ngt.		
<b>Going and getting</b> / E <b>fetching</b> a <b>flock</b> of sheep or <b>geese</b> ,	* tage ( ud / hen ) og hente	* flok	* gæs
Dora's brother <b>drives</b> / <b>herds</b> the flock home.	* drive / genne ngt. + adv.		
<b>Heading</b> the flock as the <b>foremost goose</b> , the <b>gander</b>	* lede ngt. / forrest i ngt.	* forrest	* gås
<b>10</b> walks <b>foremost</b> as if his followers were <b>the flock of God</b> .	* forrest	ledende	* gase
At the <b>foremost</b> /eE <b>headmost</b> position of her own flock,	* i spidsen		* guds hjord
<b>mother goose</b> heads her <b>goslings</b>	* forrest		
Driven by their <b>herd instinct</b> , the goslings follow	* gåsemor		* gæsling
their mother like a prist's <b>flock</b> ,	* flok-		* instinkt
Already as a child, the boy worked as a <b>herdsman</b>	* menighed		
either as a <b>sheepherd herding</b> his <b>flock</b> or <b>herd</b> of sheep,	* hyrde		
or as a <b>cowherd herding</b> his <b>herd</b> of cattle.	* fårhyrde	* drive /	* flok
Having been <b>pastured</b> // <b>put out to pasture</b> / <b>grass</b> ,	* ( ko-) kvæghyrde	vogte ngt.	* =
the <b>beef herd</b> stays out <b>on</b> the <b>pastures</b> all summer.	* sende ( dyr ) på græs	* =	* =
Having <b>pastured in</b> the fields, the <b>dairy cows</b> are <b>driven</b> /	* flok af kødkvæg		* på græs (-gang)
<b>20</b> <b>herded together</b> in the morning and in the evening.	* græsse + in / on sth.	* malkeko	* drive / genne >
Having been <b>driven</b> / <b>herded in</b> the right direction,	* ... ngt. sammen		
the <b>dairy herd</b> all by itself <b>heads for</b> home to be milked.	* ... + adv.		
The next day there is a <b>head</b> of cream on the milk.	* flok af malkekøer		* begive sig mod ngt.
When the horses <b>race</b> ( <b>against</b> ) <b>each other</b> ,	* top		
one of them usually <b>wins by a</b> ( <b>short</b> ) <b>head</b> .	* løbe kapløb mod / løbe om kap med hinanden		
In the kitchen garden, they <b>gather</b> / <b>pick</b> berries and fruit,	* vinde med en ( kort ) hovedlængde		
and in the <b>orchard</b> , they <b>pluck plump</b> fruits from the trees.	* samle / plukke ngt.		
When they pick and gather <b>gooseberries</b> from the <b>prickly</b>	* frugthave	* plukke >	* fyldige ( frugter )
<b>gooseberry bushes</b> , they have to <b>push</b> ( <b>your way</b> ) <b>through</b>	* stikkelsbær		* pigget
<b>30</b> a <b>dense tangle</b> of branches and prickly <b>twigs</b> .	* ... busk	* mase sig ( vej ) gennem ngt.	tornet
Every year they <b>head</b> some of the trees and plants.	* tæt	* sammenfiltring	* kvist
Some plants <b>grow in a head</b> as the leaves <b>come to a head</b> .	* styne ngt.		
When (a) <b>lettuce heads</b> , it <b>forms a head</b> ( <b>of lettuce</b> ).	skære ngt ned		
Growing <b>cabbage(s)</b> , and <b>cauliflower(s)</b> , they <b>harvest</b>	* vokse i hoved		* danne hoved
<b>heads of cabbage</b> and <b>heads of cauliflower</b> .	* ( hoved-) salat	* danne >	* hoved ( af salat )
They plant vegetables <b>on</b> the <b>leeward side of</b> a hedge	( salathoved )		( salathoved )
<b>in the shelter of</b> , and <b>in the lee of</b> the hedge,	* kål ( -hoveder )	* blomkål (-s) ( hoveder )	* høste >
to <b>shelter</b> them <b>from</b> the wind.	* kålhoveder		* blomkålshoveder
	* på læsiden af ngt.		
	* i ly af >		* i læ af ( hæk )
	* beskytte ngt.		* ~ mod ( vind )

**722 Utility plants** and weeds easily **tangle (up)**.

So they **weed** the kitchen garden **beds** regularly.

When they **weed ( out )** grass and other unwanted plants,  
they **root ( ) `up / out // remove** all kinds of **weeds**  
so the crops won't become **entangled in tangled weeds**.

A **weed** in one place may be a utility plant in another place.

If they don't **weed**, they will soon have a **weedy** garden  
and have to **extricate** the vegetables **from tangles of**  
**bindweed** or **bedstraw**.

**10** Birds sometimes becomes **entangled in the netting**  
put up to protect the crops.

Birds which are not **freed** from **entanglement**  
die from **entanglement**.

One day a traveller / o-f wayfarer **stops by** ( the farm ).

He had not wanted to **get entangled** with his landlady.

As he didn't want to **get into** emotional **entanglements**,  
he has **left** his **job**.

He has **had no place to rest** his **head** since then,  
and could hardly **keep** his **head above water**.

**20** He's employed as **headman** on the farm.

In times of crisis it's important to **keep** the **pot boiling**.

To their **pleasant surprise**, he has a lot of **tacit** knowledge.

In the end, **what it all boils down to** is to **keep** your **cool**,  
and not **kill** the **goose that lays** the **golden `egg(s)**.

The headman suggests producing **herbal medicines**,  
**herbal medications**, and **herbal medicaments**  
mi / me`dikēmēnts  
to be **recommended** ( to people ) **for / as medical treatment**.

People **medicate** themselves or are medicated by a doctor.

Some diseases can be **treated with alternative medicine**,

**30** and some plants have **curative / medicinal properties**.  
mi`disēnēl

A person **on medication** must **take** his **medication**.

On a **boiling hot** day Theo and the headman decide to  
set off in a **quest of medicinal herbs** and plants, believed to  
be **curatives**, having various **curative properties**.

**Questing for curative** plants, they gather **heads** of leaves  
and **heads** of flowers, and **flower clusters**.

In the fireplace, the fire **flares into life**.

They **put** the **water / the pot on** in order to **bring** the water  
to the boil E/A to a **boil**, and **boil** the **medicinal herbs**.

\* nytteplante \* filtre sig sammen

\* luge > \* bed

\* ( bort- ) luge ( planter )

\* rykke ngt. op med rode / fjerne \* ukrudtsplanter  
pl. ~ ukrudt

\* blive indviklet i ngt. \* sammenfiltret \* =

\* ukrudtsplante

\* luge \* ukrudtsbevokset

\* vikle ngt. ud af ngt. \* sammenfiltrering

\* snerle \* snerre

\* vikle ind i ngt. \* netværk

\*

\* ( blive ) befriet fra > \* indvikling

\* =

\* gøre holdt ( et sted )

\* blive rodet ind i noget ( følelsesmæssigt / erotisk )

\* blive rodet ind i > \* forvikling

\* forlade sit job

\* ikke noget fast hjem

\* ~ klare sig økonomisk

\* forkarl

\* holde gryden i kog  
~ skaffe til dagen og vejen

\* behagelige overraskelse \* uudsagt

\* holde hovedet koldt

\* slagte gåsen (~ hønen), der lægger guldæg

\* urte- \* medicin  
lægemiddel

\* = \* & helbredende substans

\* ( blive ) anbefalet ( til ng. ) \* lægelig \* behandling  
til / som >

\* medicinere / behandle ng.

\* behandle ngt. med ngt. \* & naturmedicin

\* helbredende \* & medicinsk \* egenskab  
lægende

\* på medicin / \* tage sin medicin  
medicinsk behandling

\* kogende varm

\* i søgen efter ngt. \* helbredende / \* urt  
lægende

\* lægeurt \* lægende / helbredende \* egenskab

\* søge efter \* helbredende \* topskud ( af blade )

\* ... af blomster \* blomsterstand

\* blusse / flamme op

\* sætte vand / gryden over

\* bringe ngt. i kog \* koge ngt. \* lægeurt

**723** After some time the water has **come to the boil / a boil**.

\* komme i kog

When the **pot boils**, which means when the **water boils**,  
he puts some **flower heads** into the **boiling** water.

\* gryden koger

\* vandet ...

\* kurv ( som blomsterstand )

\* kogende

When the mixture **boil**, he lets the pot **boil away**.

\* =

\* ... roligt

At the **boiling point**, when the water **is on the / a boil**  
the water **changes into steam** and **vapour**.

\* kogepunkt

\* i kog

\* omdannes / blive til ngt.

\* damp

\* em

He **boils** the mixture **gently**, so it doesn't **boil over**.

\* koge let

\* koge over

As the mixture **boils**, it slowly **boils`down**.

\* koge ind

When he has **boiled** ( ) **down** the mixture,

\* koge ngt. ind

**10** and the water has almost **boiled away**,

\* koge væk

he has **boiled** the extract **down** to a **medicament**  
- ` -  
apt to **cure** ( sb. **of** ) / **treat** a number of **diseases**.

\* koge ind

\* medikament, lægemiddel

\* kurere ( ng. for ) / behandle >

\* sygdom

Theo has **boiled** the procedure **down to** a few steps.

\* koge ngt. ned til ngt.

So they sell a variety of medicaments to be used

\*

**for various medicinal purposes**.

\* til helbredende formål

Theo uses a medicament for **medication** and **medical**  
treatment of skin covered in **pimples / spots** E/A zits.

\* medicinsk behandling

\* medicinsk  
lægelig

\* bums, filipens

An **abscess** or **boil** has come **to** a **head** when the **infected**  
red **swelling** under the skin is full of yellow liquid called **pus**.

\* byld

\* ~ i knop

\* inficeret

\* hævelse

\* pus

**20** One day the family needs a **witness to** a document  
so the headman **witnesses** Dora's or Theo's signature.

\* vidne til / på ngt.

\* bevidne ngt.

**On** this special **occasion** they cook **roast goose**.

\* ved denne ... lejlighed

\* stegt gås

At the tail end is **parson's nose** E/A **pope's nose**.

\* sognpræstens ( glds. ) / pavens ... ( = gumpen )

Its tail **twitching**, the cat **is poised** to have a titbit E/A tidbit.

\* bevæge sig i ryk

\* være på spring for at -

They **put potatoes on to boil**, and **put on** another **pan**  
to **boil carrots, leeks, kale, spinach**, ( **Brussels** ) **sprouts** etc.  
`spinid§

\* sætte kartofler over ( til at koge )

\* gryde  
kasserolle

\* koge ngt. \* gule- \* porre \* grønkål \* spinat \* rosen-  
rødder kål

They **boil** ( ) **up** a **lukewarm** soup in a **cooking pot**

\* koge ngt. op

\* lunken

\* ( mad- ) gryde

so they can have a **boiling** ( **hot** ) / **scalding** ( **hot** ) **helping**.

\* kogende varm  
~ skoldhed

\* portion

If they forget a pan, it might **boil over** and perhaps **boil dry**.

\* koge over

\* koge tør

**30** The family **act on / follow** the **principle that**

\* leve efter / følge det princip at -

**what's sauce for the gander** is **sauce for the goose**,  
all participants in the meal have a nice piece of roast.

\* hvad, der er sovs for gasen, ... for gåsen  
~ hvad den ene må, må den anden også  
\*

In the morning Dora **boils** the **water / kettle**.

\* koge vand

When the **water / E kettle boils**, she makes herbal drinks

\* vandet / kedlen koger

She uses a **strainer** to separate solids from liquids.

\* ( te- ) si

**Boiling** an egg **for** everybody, she lets the eggs **boil for**  
three minutes until they are **soft-boiled**.

\* koge ngt. til ng.

\* koge i ( x tid )

\* blødkogt

She may **boil** everybody a sausage or **fry** some bacon.

\* koge ng. ngt.

\* stege ngt.

The bacon **fries in** a **frying pan** /A& **frypan** or **skillet**.

\* ngt. steger

\* ~ på >

\* stegepande

<b>724</b> The headman is <b>considerate</b> enough never to	* hensynsfuld ( nok til aldrig at - )
<b>play gooseberry</b> (E) in the company of Theo and Dora.	* spille > * stikkelsbær ~ være femte hjul til en vogn / tredje hjul til en gig
Theo and Dora have a son, a cheerful, <b>inquisitive</b> little boy.	* spørgelysten nysgerrig
He has a <b>lively, curious, inquisitive</b> , and <b>inquiring</b> mind.	* livligt * nysgerrigt * spørgelystent * = ( sind ) opvagt
His parents sometimes have to put a stop to his <b>youthful</b>	* ungdommelig
<b>high jinks</b> / <b>hijinks</b> such as <b>twitching</b> his mothers skirt	* spilopper * rykke / trække i ng.
or <b>twitching</b> things <b>out of</b> people's hands.	* rykke / trække ng. ud af ng.
As the curtain <b>twitched</b> , he revealed his hiding place.	* bevæge sig lidt
He sometimes has to face an <b>inquisition</b> from his parents	* skrap udspørgen
<b>10</b> about where he's been and what <b>boyish tricks</b> he's done.	* drengestreger
Expecting a child to be a <b>paragon</b> of <b>virtue</b>	* dydsmønster
is ( going on ) a <b>wild`goose chase</b> .	* ~ nytteløs jagt / forehavende
Theo feels extremely happy but thinking about his past	*
as an inquisitor is a <b>different kettle of fish</b> .	* en helt anden historie
Thinking about his past <b>makes</b> his <b>blood boil</b> ;	* bringe ngs. blod i kog
he <b>boils (over)</b> with self-reproach.	* koge (over) af
Before he took advantage of <b>following the herd</b> ,	* følge med flokken
he <b>wouldn't say boo to a goose</b> .	* ikke sige buh / bøh til en gås ( ikke være særlig modig )
He <b>must take</b> his <b>medicine</b> .	* tage følgerne / skraldet
<b>20</b> He shivers / shudders with terror by the mere thought of	*
getting <b>some</b> or just a <b>little of</b> his <b>own medicine</b> .	* smage sin egen ...
It <b>gives</b> him <b>goose pimples</b> eE/eE < <b>flesh</b> /eA < <b>bumps</b>	* give ng. gåsehud
just to think about it.	*
At / in school the boy is good at gymnastics and sports.	*
He easily does a <b>headstand</b> and a <b>headspring</b> .	* hovedstand * hovedspring ( gym.)
He loves to do a <b>headlong dive</b> when they <b>go for a swim</b> /	* hoved først * dykning * ~ tage afsted for at svømme ~ hovedspring & ~ bade
<b>go for a bathe</b> E f , and <b>bathe</b> o-f in the river.	* - - - ~ at bade * bade
When it's cold, they <b>get goose pimples</b> / < <b>flesh</b> / < <b>bumps</b> .	* gåsehud
At school, pupils and teachers have <b>breaks</b> E/A <b>recesses</b> .	* pause, ~ frikvarter
<b>30</b> After a lesson, the pupils <b>herd on to</b> the <b>schoolyard</b> .	* flokkes afsted til > * skolegård
At <b>break ( time )</b> / <b>recess</b> , the pupils play children's games	* i frikvarteret
<b>round about in</b> the <b>playground</b> and <b>in</b> the <b>playing field</b> .	* rundt omkring * på legepladsen * på sportsplads & ~ skolegård
After <b>break ( time )</b> / <b>recess</b> , when the bell has rung,	* efter ...
the teacher <b>herds</b> the playful pupils <b>together</b> ,	* drive / genne ng. sammen
and <b>drives</b> / <b>herds</b> them <b>back to</b> their classrooms	* ... + adv.
During a lesson, the pupils may <b>have</b> a short <b>break</b> / <b>recess</b> .	* have ... pause
In the middle of the school day, they <b>have</b> a <b>lunch break</b> / =.	* frokost pause, ~ spisefrikvarter
E: At <b>lunch break</b> , they eat their <b>packed`lunch</b> .	* i ... * madpakke
A: At <b>lunch recess</b> , they eat their <b>`lunch bags</b> .	* = * =

<b>725</b> During the <b>school year</b> , the students regularly	* skoleår	
<b>take / do / sit a test on</b> a subject.	* ~ være oppe til en prøve i ngt.	
They get a <b>mark in the test</b> / a <b>grade on the test</b> .	* få en karakter for ...	
Everybody hopes to <b>attain / achieve</b> good <b>marks / grades</b> .	* opnå >	* =
At the end, there are <b>oral</b> and <b>written exam</b> (<ination)s.		* mundtlig
The <b>test questions</b> and the <b>exam questions</b> are	* prøvespørgsmål	* eksamens-
<b>invented / set</b> by the <b>examiners</b> or a team of experts.	* fundet på / sammensat af >	* eksaminator
The son <b>answers</b> nearly all the <b>questions</b> in the test.	* besvare ngt.	* spørgsmål
In the oral exam, the <b>examiner questions</b> the <b>examinees</b>	* eksaminator	* udspørge > * eksaminant
<b>10</b> on the books they have been studying.	* ~ udfra ngt.	
In E/A on their <b>exam in</b> religion, there's sure to be	* til eksamen i ngt.	
a <b>question on</b> the <b>Trinity</b> , the difficult <b>question of</b> the <b>union</b>	* spørgsmål vedrørende	* ~ sagen om > * forening >
of the <b>Father, the Son</b> and the <b>Holy Ghost / Spirit</b>	* af >	* Faderen, Sønnen og Helligånden
regarded as one <b>god</b> (<head ), the <b>Godhead</b> .	* gud ( -dom / -dommelighed )	* Gud
<b>Marking</b> eE/eA <b>grading</b> an examinee's <b>performance</b> ,	* bedømme >	* præstation
the teacher in agreement with an <b>external examiner</b>	* ekstern >	* eksaminator, ~ censor
may give a <b>high, middle</b> , or <b>low mark</b> E/A <b>grade</b> .	* høj > * middel > * lav	* ~ karakter
<b>Acquitting himself</b> well / <b>doing well in</b> E/A on his <b>exam</b> ,	* klare sig godt til ...	
the son <b>gets a good mark in</b> E/A a good <b>grade on</b> his <b>exam</b> .	* få en ... karakter til sin eksamen	
<b>20</b> One year when there's an <b>election</b> for the <b>parish council</b> .	* valg til ngt.	* sogneråd
Some people <b>put</b> ( ) `up Theo as a candidate.	* opstille ng. som ngt.	
Theo agrees to <b>stand</b> E/A <b>run for election</b> .	* stille op til >	* valg
Being at the <b>head of</b> the <b>poll</b> , Theo <b>heads</b> the poll	* ligge i spidsen for / føre, vinde >	* afstemning valg
although his opponent has <b>made / formed</b> a <b>heady scheme</b> .	* lægge / udtænke >	* klog, smart udspekuleret
People in the parish have to pay <b>headmoney</b> .	* familie	* plan rænke, intrige * kopskat
In a public discussion, <b>inquirers</b> ask a lot of questions.	* spørger	
Theo is <b>elected</b> ( as ) <b>chairman</b> of the p. c. ( parish council ).	* vælge nng. til ngt.	* -sformand
After the <b>bruising</b> meeting, <b>worth</b> the participants' <b>while</b> ,	* ~ anstrengende	* værd > ngs. tid ~ udbytterigt for ng.
the inn has <b>special offers</b> :	* særlige tilbud	
<b>30</b> Cold dinner at £ 1 a <b>head</b> or hot dinner at £ 1.5 <b>per head</b> .	* pr. person	* =
The ( master ) <b>chef</b> / the <b>head cook</b> / the <b>main cook</b>	* cheffkok	
has cooked delicious <b>brawn</b> E/A <b>headcheese</b> .	* grisesylte	
<b>Headlining</b> ( the ( <b>school</b> ) <b>play</b> ) one year,	* ~ være hovedfigur ( i > )	* ( skole-) teaterstykke ( ~ skolekomedie )
the boy is the <b>headliner</b> on the <b>school playbill</b> .	* hovednavn på >	* = * plakat
The <b>drummer</b> must stretch the <b>head</b> of the <b>drum</b> .	* trommeslager	* ~ skind ⇔ * tromme
He <b>plays</b> the / his <b>drum</b> with a couple of <b>drumsticks</b> ,	* spille ( på / på sin ) tromme	* trommestik
and when something exciting happens, his <b>drum rolls</b> .	* tromme >	* ~ udsende trommehvirvler ~ lyder der / høres trommehvirvler
The play is <b>calculated</b> to amuse the audience.	* beregnet på at -	
The audience laugh(s) when an actor <b>gooses</b> another actor.	* nappe ng. i enden / stikke en finger op mellem balderne på ng.	

## A DESCENDANT OF THE INQUISITOR

<b>726</b> A <b>descendant of</b> Theo and Dora works at travel agency.	* efterkommer	
He has a <b>glowing testimonial</b> .	* ~ strålende >	* vidnesbyrd
	testi`mêuniêl	~ anbefaling, skudsmål
The agency <b>gets</b> a lot of <b>questions, inquiries and queries</b>	* får >	* forespørgsel / henvendelse >
<b>from</b> applicants.	* fra ng.	
The agency <b>first and foremost</b> offers travels and holidays	* først og fremmest	
<b>to the common herd</b> .	* almindelige mennesker	
People <b>ask questions</b> , and <b>make inquiries</b> and <b>queries</b>	* stille spørgsmål	* komme med forespørgsler
<b>about</b> train and ferry times and <b>overnight accomodation(s)</b> .	* om >	* overnatningsmuligheder ( U E/A pl.).
Some tourists are inclined to <b>follow</b> the <b>herd</b> .	* følge flokken	
<b>10</b> while others don't want to <b>run with</b> the <b>herd</b> .	* =	
They don't want to be <b>herded around</b> with other tourists.	* lede / guide omkring	
<b>On inquiry</b> , the <b>inquirers</b> get <b>up-to-date</b> information.	* ved forespørgsel / henvendelse	* forespørger * opdateret
The agency <b>lives up to</b> it's <b>reputation</b> , as satisfied	* leve op til sit ry	
customers will <b>testify</b> .	* bevidne	
A catalogue is full of <b>testimonials from</b> satisfied customers.	* vidnesbyrd fra	
The busy shop <b>bears testimony / witness to</b> the success	* vidne om ngt.	
of the agency, and the fact that a lot of customers come back	*	
<b>testifies to</b> satisfied customers.	* vidne om ngt.	
The fact that most arrangements get <b>booked up</b> /	* booket op	
<b>20</b> get <b>fully booked</b> <b>testifies that</b> the customers are satisfied.	* =	* vidne om at -
The success <b>is a testimony of / to</b> the staff's competence.	* vidnesbyrd om / bevis på ngt.	
Customers who <b>have an inquiry</b> , or <b>have inquiries</b>	* have en forespørgsel	* ... forespørgsler
<b>make an / the / their inquiry</b> , or <b>make ( the / their ) inquiries</b>	* komme med ...	* ... forespørgsler
by <b>inquiring</b> a name / place / date / etc. / whxx - ⇔ <b>of</b> the staff.	* ~ forespørge om ngt. / hvxx -	
Customers who <b>have a query</b> , or <b>have queries</b>	* have > * en forespørgsel	* ... forespørgsler
<b>make a / the / their query</b> , or <b>make ( the / their ) queries</b>	* komme med ...	* ... forespørgsler
by <b>querying</b> whxx - .	* forespørge hvxx -	
Customers who <b>have a question</b> , or <b>have any questions</b>	* have > * et spørgsmål ( > )	* ... spørgsmål ( > )
( <b>to ask</b> ) can <b>ask a / the / their question(s) of</b> the staff;	* ( at stille ) * stille ... spørgsmål ( -et / -ene ) til ng.	
<b>30</b> The customers <b>put - / - / - question(s) to</b> the staff.	* - = -	
The customer <b>ask</b> the staff - / - / - <b>question(s)</b> .	* - = -	
The staff try to <b>answer { any / the / their question(s) //</b>	* svare på / besvare ... spørgsmål	
<b>a / the / their inquiry / &lt;ies //</b> - / - / - <b>query / &lt;ies</b> .	* ... forespørgsel	
Many travellers go on holiday <b>in quest of</b> adventure.	* i søgen efter ngt.	
' How can they afford that ? ' ( <b>That's a ) good question</b> .	* ( det er et ) godt spørgsmål	
As <b>it's just / merely / only a question of</b> money,	* bare / blot / et spørgsmål om ngt.	
it's <b>simply a question of</b> getting a job and saving money;	* kun / simpelthed ...	
it's a <b>question of cutting</b> one's <b>coat according to</b> one's <b>cloth</b> .	* ~ sætte næring efter tæring	

<b>727</b> People <b>have questions on</b> communications (pl.),	* have >	* spørgsmål om ngt.
and <b>inquiries</b> and <b>queries about accommodation</b> .	* & forespørgsel om >	* indkvartering
A couple want to <b>go ( away ) on a prolonged weekend trip</b> .	* tage ( afsted ) på >	* forlænget * tur prê`långd - - - E/A ` - - kort rejse
Another couple would love to join them <b>over the weekend</b> ,	* over ⇔ weekenden	
but an extra day is a <b>question of</b> time.	* spørgsmål om ( tid )	
It <b>appears / turns out</b> , however, <b>that</b> they can't go –	* vise sig	
<b>going away is out of the question – it's out of the question</b> .	* tage væk * være helt udelukket * det er - - -	
Having <b>made</b> some <b>queries</b> , the <b>first mentioned</b> couple	* indhente oplysninger	* førstnævnte
eventually <b>decide on</b> a <b>trip to</b> the seaside.	* beslutte sig til ngt. * tur / kort rejse til ( et sted )	
<b>10</b> They buy a <b>return E/A round-trip ticket</b> .	* returbillet	
It's <b>an</b> 80 miles <b>round trip</b> ( E:C ) to the seaside resort,	* en ... tur-retur rejse	
once a <b>playground for</b> the rich and famous.	* ~ tumleplads for ng.	
It's 80 miles <b>round trip</b> ( A:U ) to go there.	* ... =	
If there's a <b>hundred</b> miles to go <b>there and back</b> ,	* et ...	* frem og tilbage tur-retur
it's a <b>100</b> miles <b>round trip</b> E/A it's <b>100</b> miles <b>round trip</b> .	* =	
They <b>reckon on</b> ( having ) good weather.	* regne med ( at ) ngt.	
They <b>reckon on</b> the weather <b>being</b> fine.	* ... med ngt. ⇔ at -	
Travellers <b>have</b> a <b>query</b> all the time.	* have en forespørgsel / et spørgsmål	
They <b>query where</b> to go and <b>how</b> to get there,	* spørge om hvxx	
<b>20</b> and <b>query what</b> the price will be.	* =	
' Can I <b>ask</b> you a <b>question</b> ,' <b>queries</b> a traveller.	* må jeg stille et spørgsmål	* ( fore-) spørge
' <b>Who</b> will be our guide,' he <b>queries</b> .	* =	
A customer <b>queries</b> a bill as it seems far too high.	* forhøre sig / spørge om sætte spørgsmålstegn ved ngt.	
He hasn't <b>reckoned on</b> spending that much money	* regne med at -	
so <b>queries whether</b> the bill is correct.	* ... hvorvidt	
He complains in a <b>querulous</b> voice about the bill.	* brokkende	
Later, it <b>turns out / turned out emerges / emerged that</b>	* kom frem / viste sig at -	
there must have been some <b>confusion / mistake</b> .	* forveksling fejltagelse	* fejltagelse forveksling
The hotel must have made a mistake (in) adding the bill.	*	
<b>30</b> A railway runs through the town.	*	
' What time is the train leaving,' a traveller <b>queries</b> .	* ( fore-) spørge	
There is a <b>headway</b> of two hours.	* interval mellem afgang i samme retning	
Wearing a <b>boiler suit / overalls</b> (E) or <b>dungerees</b> ,	* kedeldragt	* overalls
the <b>engine driver</b> controls the <b>head of steam</b>	* lokomotivfører	* damptryk
and the <b>head of water</b> in the <b>boiler</b> .	* vandtryk	* kedel
An <b>engineer</b> (A) wears <b>coveralls</b> or <b>overalls</b> .	* lokomotivfører * kedeldragt	* overalls
A <b>central heating boiler</b> is a container in which water is	* central varme	* =
heated to provide hot water and heating in a building.	*	

728 Many roads are <b>jammed</b> / ( <b>jam-</b> ) ` <b>packed with</b> cars.	* proppet med ngt.		
Unfortunately, two cars <b>collide head-on</b> at a <b>heady pace</b> .	* & støde sammen	* frontalt	* heftig * fart
Being <b>delayed</b> , <b>commuters</b> face long <b>delays on</b> the roads.	* ( blive ) forsinket	* pendler	* forsinkelser på ( vejene )
The recuers <b>survey</b> the <b>scene of</b> the <b>accident</b> ,	* se ud over / tage et overblik over >	* område ↔	* ulykkes-
and <b>survey</b> the <b>damage</b> (U).	* - - - >		* skaden, ~ skaderne
All the <b>headlamps</b> and <b>headlights</b> are crushed.	* forlygte		* =
After the <b>head-on</b> collision, the drivers are treated	* frontal-		
and <b>nursed</b> at the hospital <b>by</b> doctors and nurses.	* pleje ng.		
The <b>chief physicians</b> or <b>consultant</b> (E) ( <b>head doctors</b> )	* overlæge		
10 and the <b>head nurses</b> of the <b>ward</b> have the highes rank.	* oversygeplejerske		
At the hospital they have ( <b>ward</b> ) <b>rounds</b> .	* stuegang		
A doctor and a nurse <b>on</b> their <b>ward go / do</b> the <b>rounds</b> .	* på vagt		* gå stuegang
<b>On</b> his ( <b>ward</b> ) <b>round</b> , the doctor <b>surveys / inspects</b>	* på sin runde, ~ stuegang		* bese / tilse ng.
the patients <b>in</b> the <b>ward</b> . <u>Look at page 800 !</u>	* på afdelingen		
Having talked to a patient, and <b>surveyed / inspected</b>	* bese / tilse ngt.		
the part of their body <b>affected by</b> a disease or an injury,	* berørt af ( sygdom )		
the doctor <b>surveys</b> the situation.	* vurdere ngt.		
A doctor may use a <b>head lamp</b> and a <b>head mirror</b> .	* pandelampe		* pandespejl
Patients in a critical state are <b>placed under surveillance</b> ,	* anbringe ng. under overvågning		
20 and <b>kept under surveillance</b> .	* holde ng. ...		
In Britain, the government provide health care	*		
by the <b>National `Health Service</b> ( the NHS ).	* det nationale sundhedsvæsen		
The NHS also <b>carries out / conducts surveys</b> of patients	* ( spørgeskema- ) undersøgelse af ng. / ngt.		
and the health condition of the population.	*		
In the US the government helps to pay the cost of	*		
medical treatment for poor people by <b>Medicaid</b> ,	* =		
and by <b>Medicare</b> , the government helps to pay for	* =		
the medical treatment of old people.	*		
In some countries like Britain a <b>health visitor</b> is a nurse	* hjemmesygeplejerske		
who visits people in their homes.	* sundhedsplejerske		
30 The <b>health authorities</b> and the <b>health services</b>	* sundhedsmyndighederne		* sundhedsvæsnat
<b>keep ongoing</b> epidemics <b>under surveillance</b> .	* holde ngt. * igangværende		* under overvågning
In bed, a patient listens to the <b>headline news</b>	* ~ kort nyhedsoversigt		
by wearing a <b>pair / set</b> of <b>headphones</b> consisting of	* hovedtelefon		
two <b>receivers</b> or <b>earphones</b> , and a <b>headband</b> .	* modtager	* øretelefon	* hovedbånd
Having <b>got well / recovered</b> , and soon to be <b>discharged</b> ,	* komme sig		* udskrive ng.
the patient hope to <b>be off / leave for pastures new</b> ( hum.)	* være af sted mod >	* græsgange	* nye
and <b>be off / leave for greener pastures</b> ( hum.).	* søge >	* grønnere >	* =

729 There's a **heated** debate on environmental problems.

In **earlier times**, the government **practically** / **virtually** **allowed** or **gave** landowners and industries **free** / **full rein**.

**Formerly** / **previously**, the government, **in practice**, **allowed** or **gave free** / **full rein** to the exploitation of living beings, the land, and the environment.

Officials concerned with environmental policy predict that **a day of reckoning** will come - if not it has already come.

Pollution and **scenic destruction** are widespread problems.

10 As we need to **rein** () **in** exploitation and pollution, we must take action to **rein** () **back** exploitation and exploiters.

The government must **keep** a **tight rein** on both.

There is **convincing evidence** of a link between **global warming** and the **emission** of carbon dioxide and other **greenhouse gasses** **into** the atmosphere.

Changes in the **tangible world** inevitably causes changes in the **intangible** world.

**World scientists** look for further **evidence** to support the theory of **the `greenhouse effect**.

20 Working to have their **guesses** confirmed by **calculation**, they use formulars and computers to **calculate** the changes.

**By** their **calculations**, even minor climate changes may cause **incalculable** damage to the environment.

It may be true but according to **the chaos theory**, the exact future consequences for an open complex system like the Earth will always be **incalculable** in the long term.

Even if a huge number of conditions on and around the Earth change **tangibly**, and can be measured, it will never be possible to provide a complete set of factors

30 as even the smallest unnoticed cause may have a great effet : **Great events and small occasions**.

The **intangibility** of human motives makes it especially difficult for the **social sciences** to make exact predictions.

As long as the motives behind human behaviour are beyond **tangibility**, and seem to change **intangibly**, the future remains unpredictable and unknown.

The different species of living beings have various ability to

**acclimatize** /A& **acclimate** ( themselves ) ( **to** new conditions )  
ê klaimétaiz      `aklêmeit  
so their ability of **acclimatization** plays important role.

\* ophedet ( debat )

\* i tidligere tider

\* praktisk talt

\* tillade / give ng. / ng. >

\* frie tøjler

\* førhen, tidligere

\* i praksis

\* tillade / give frie tøjler til ng.

\* til at -

\*

\* regnskabets time

\* landskabelig

\* ødelæggelse

\* tøjle / ~ bremse ng.

\* ... ng. / ng.

\* holde ng. / ng. i stramme tøjler

\* overbevisende

\* vidnesbyrd om

\* global opvarmning

\* udledning af >

\* drivhus gas

\* ~ til ng.

\* håndgribelig verden

\* u-

\* verdensvidenskabsmænd

\* vidnesbyrd til at

\* drivhuseffekt

\* gæt

\* beregning

\* beregne ng.

\* ifølge ngs. beregninger

\* uberegnelig stor  
uoverskuelig  
kaosteorien

\*

\* umulig at beregne

\*

\* håndgribeligt

\*

\*

\* ~ liden tue vælter stort læs

\* uhåndgribelighed

\* samfundsvidenskab

\*

\* håndgribelighed

\* uhåndgribeligt

\*

\*

\* akklimatisere sig ( til ng. )

\* akklimatisering

**730 World environmentalists are united in their quest for environmental preservation.**  
invairên`mentêlists

They want **tangible** improvements and **tangible** results.

Measures need to be taken to **mitigate** the environmental effects of climate changes and **mitigate** poverty.

**Soil erosion** must be **mitigated** by the planting of trees.

Some of the ( world's ) **foremost** scientists look for further **evidence to oppose / rebut / refute** the theory of a greenhouse effect.

**10 The question is** whether it's man-made or natural.

Maintaining that the **statistics** are **questionable**, these scientists **stick to the assertion that** the conclusions other scientists have come to **are** highly **questionable**.

So **questioning** these scientists' conclusions, some scientists **question whether** global warming is man-made.

They **call for** an independent scientific **inquiry into** the problems.

**Questioning how to meet the challenge / problem of** climate changes, some scientists **question what's to be done**.

**20 The environmentalists** consider some of their opponents ( to be ) **questionable** characters whose motives are highly **questionable**.

**It's questionable whether** technical solutions are a good way of **tackling** and **solving the problems**.

Conservative governments often **advocate reining ( ) in / reining ( ) back** public spending.

When conservative governments sometimes have to **hand over the reins of** power, they sometimes have to **hand over the reins to** a more progressive government.

**30 Taking up the reins of** government, the new governing party is more inclined to **give / allow { free / full rein to** alternative projects.

Years in opposition helped to **weld** the party **together**.

As the new government **gives / allows** the scientists and their alternative projects **free / full rein**, the environmental scientists have the opportunity to **give / allow** their imagination **free / full rein** // to **give / allow { free / full rein to** their imagination.

\* verdensmiljøforkæmper \* forenet i > \* søgen efter >

\* miljømæssig \* bevarelse  
 ~ miljøbevaring

\* håndgribelig

\* afbøde / mindske ngt.

\* afhjælpe ngt.

\* jord erosion \* =

\* fremmest ledende

\* bevismateriale / vidnesbyrd til at \* modsætte sig opponere imod

\* tilbagevise / afvise ngt.

\* spørgsmålet er

\* statistik \* tvivlsom

\* stå / holde fast på den formening at -

\* være højst tvivlsomme

\* betvivle / sætte spørgsmålstegn ved ngt.

\* ... hvorvidt

\* efterlyse ngt. \* høring om ngt.

\*

\* sætte spørgsmålstegn ved hvordan man -

\* ... ved hvad - \* der skal gøres

\*

\* tvivlsom

\* =

\* det er tvivlsomt hvorvidt -

\* imødegå / angribe / tackle > \* problem

\* tale / slå til lyd for at - \* ~ tøjle / bremse >

\* - - - ( udgift )

\*

\* overdrage > \* ( magtens ) tøjler

\* ... tøjlerne til ng.

\* overtage > \* ( regerings- ) styringen

\*

\* give / tillade > \* frit spillerum til ngt.

\* svejse ( et parti ) sammen

\* give / tillade ng. / >

\* ngt. frie tøjler

\*

\* give / tillade ( fantasi ) > \* frie tøjler, ~ frit spil

\* - = -

## SPORT(S)

**731** On the **evidence** of their recent matches, it is unlikely the visiting team will win the match.

The home team's football star **heads** the ball **into** the **goal** but the referee **disallows** the goal.

**Querying** the referee's **judgement**, the player who made the **header gets into** a **tangle with** the referee.

**Keeping** his emotions **tightly reined back / in**, the referee **surveys** the player **cooly**.

As he's **in no position** to **query** the referee's decision,

**10** the **insubordinate** player is shown the **yellow card**.  
insê`bâ~dinê`

**Tempers flare** as many spectators are **querying** his decision.

They are **querying whether** his judgement was right.

Although a referee chosen to **officiate ( at )** an official match is expected to be neutral, **anger boils up** inside some fans.

So the **situation boils up** as **tempers boil over**.

Crowds of fans **boil over**, **baying for blood**.  
being

Having scored a brilliant goal in **overtime** E/A **extra time**, the **scorer turns head over heels** with happiness.

**20** Football is a **question of** control and **creative** expression.  
kri`eitiv

**Sidelining** a player, an injury **puts** him **out** of **reckoning**, and put a **substitute ( player )** into **reckoning** (E).

So the **reserve** is **in reckoning**.

The coach **puts** a **query against** the injured player's name as he is not sure whether he will be able to play again.

The injured player's financial affairs **gets into** a **tangle**.

The injured player is not a **querulous** person but his financial affairs **are** soon **in a tangle**.

Due to his injury and loss of income, he is bothered with

**30 tangled (up)** financial affairs.

The players **query** their contracts.

They want schemes with **tangible** benefits rather than **intangibles** ( usu. pl.) like **glittering promises**.

The club decided to arrange a **testimonial match**.

Crowds of **high-spirited** fans **herd on to** the football **arena**.

The players have to push their way through a **herd** of fans.

Some walls and fences are provided with **barbed wire** to prevent intruders from climbing over.

\* ud fra kendsgerningerne om ng.

\*

\* heade / nikke ( en bold )

\* i mål

\* annullere / underkende ng.

\* betvivle ng.

\* dom  
kendelse

\* hovedstød

\* komme i >

\* håndgemæng /  
skænderi med ng.

\* holde ( følelser ) stramt tøjlet, ~ tilbage

\* betragte ng.

\* køligt

\* ~ ikke være berettiget til at -

\* betvivle ng.

\* opsætsig

\* gult kort

\* betvivle /

sætte spørgsmålstegn ved ng.

\*

\* ... hvorvidt / om -

\* forstå ( ved ) ng.

\* vrede >

\* koge op

\* situation >

\* koge op

\* temperament

\* ... over

\* ng. ... over

\* glamme / ~ hyle efter >

\* blod

~ true ng.

\* overtiden

\* målscorer

\* slå en koldbøtte / saltomortale

\* spørgsmål om ng.

\* kreativ

\* ~ sætte ng ud af spillet \* lade ng. ude af betragtning

\* reserve ( spiller )

\* lade ng. komme i ...

\* =

\* være i ...

\* sætte et spørgsmålstegn ved ng.

\*

\* gå i håknude

\* klagende

klynkende

\* befinde sig i håknude

\*

\* forviklet

\* betvivle / ~ sætte spørgsmålstegn ved ng.

\* håndgribelig

\* goder

\* uhåndgribelige størrelser

\* ~ gyldne løfter

\* afskeds- / æreskamp

\* opstemt

\* flokkes / gå i flok til >

\* ~ stadion

\* flok

\* pigtråd

\*

<b>732</b> The police are much <b>in evidence</b> in the streets	* ~ ( tydeligt ) til syne
to prevent violence from <b>flaring (up)</b> after the match.	* flamme / blusse op
All the same, people in the neighbourhood complain	*
about <b>street violence</b> and <b>disorderly behaviour</b> .	* gadevold ( gadeuorden ) * uordentlig opførsel
So the police make some reports on <b>dis`orderly`conduct</b>	* =
( <b>in the street</b> ), mostly on people being drunk and <b>disorderly</b> .	* ( & gadeuorden ) * uordentlig
The empty shops in the <b>high street</b> E/A <b>main street</b>	* hovedgade
<b>testify to the depth</b> of ( the ) <b>recession</b> .	* vidne om ngt. * dybde * & tilbagegang
The police <b>brush</b> ( ) <b>`aside</b> most complaints	* affærdige ngt.
<b>10</b> as <b>lively</b> and <b>excited behavior</b> .	* livlig og opstemt opførsel
<b>`Putting it down to high spirits</b> , they say it was just	* henregne ngt. til * opløftet stemning
<b>adolescent`high jinks</b> (o-f) and <b>horseplay</b> (o-f).	* betragte ngt. som
adê`lesênt	* ungdommelig * skæg og ballade * ~ højroret slåseri for sjov
The club's results <b>are a testimony to / of</b> the coach's skill	* vidnesbyrd om bevis på
and hard work so the club organizes a <b>testimonial dinner</b>	* ~ æresmiddag
in honour of the coach.	*
Many of the guests talk about their <b>recent</b> journeys	* nyeligen sted funden
and <b>recent</b> films / movies.	* ny ( -eligen kommet frem / udgivet / opdaget etc. )
The pyramids are an <b>eloquent testimony / testament</b>	* udtryksfuld ( veltalende ) * vidnesbyrd / bevis > * = >
<b>to / of</b> the ancient Egyptians' engeneering skills.	* om / på ngt.
<b>20</b> A film / movie <b>testifies to</b> the courage of ordinary people	* give vidnesbyrd om ngt.
during the war.	*
During the war, the armies used <b>entanglements</b> (pl.) –	* pigtrådsspærringer
barriers of barbed wire – to stop the enemy from coming close.	*
Carrying out <b>reconnaissance missions</b> , the armies sent out	* rekognoscering mission
<b>reconnaissance patrols / platoons</b> on <b>surveillance missions</b>	* ... patrulje * overvågning
to <b>survey</b> the enemy.	* overvåge / vurdere ngt.
<b>Carrying on 24-hour surveillance</b> (U) <b>of</b> the enemy, both	* opretholde ngt. * overvågning
armies <b>kept</b> the enemy <b>under</b> constant close <b>surveillance</b> .	* holde ng. under ... overvågning
A surveillance officer <b>gave</b> a <b>survey</b> of the situation.	* give en oversigt / vurdering af ngt.
<b>30</b> The situation was <b>extraordinarily</b> difficult to <b>survey</b> .	* usædvanlig / overraskende ( vanskelig ) * overskue
Military intelligence <b>surveys</b> the enemy's armaments.	* overvåge, tage et overblik over / vurdere ngt.
<b>Surveying</b> the enemy's weapons and military equipment,	*
illustrated military textbooks <b>give</b> a comprehensive <b>survey</b> of	* give > * ( omfattende ) overblik / oversigt
the enemy's armaments.	*
Equipped with <b>survey equipment</b> , <b>survey aircrafts</b>	* opmålings- * udstyr * opmålings- * fly
as well as <b>surveillance aircrafts</b> carried out <b>surveys</b> of	* overvågningsfly * iagttagelse, opmåling kortlægning
areas of land in order to make a maps of them.	*
<b>Survey ships</b> were sent on voyages to <b>survey</b>	* opmålingsskibe * opmåle >
the <b>coastlines</b> and the <b>depths</b> of the sea / ocean.	* kystlinier * ( hav-) dybde

**733** Some guests **put** ( ) **out** / **stub** ( ) **out** a **cigarette**,  
**one after another** / **one after the other**.

The ashtrays full of **butts** / **stubs** **testify** that smoking  
 hasn't been **stubbed** **out**.

Some people believe we are now **witnessing**  
 an **unprecedented** increase in violent crime.

A study **investigates** the **impact** of violent films / movies  
 and computer games **on** young people.

There has been a **survey** of people of different age groups.

**10** Investigating facts about people and things,

a **survey** **institution** **does** / **makes** / **conducts** / **carries out**  
**surveys** ( **about** / **of** social class, behaviour, opinion etc. )

Having **invented** / **set** the questions for the survey,  
 experts **work out** a **questionnaire**: a set of questions  
 that they are going to ask a large number of people.

**Filling in** / **out** a **questionnaire**, people may **complete**  
 a **questionnaire** **about everything** **under** the **sun**.

Many **surveys** **show** / **reveal** ( that ) there is  
 a **link** **between** social class and behaviour.

**20** In a **survey** of a large number of young people,  
 the data obtained showed among many other things that  
 too many young people are unable to write and spell well,  
 as employers will **testify**.

Many **answers** / **replies** / **responses** of a **survey** **reflect**  
 the **stultifying** effects of **monotonous** working **routines**,  
 and **testify** to the effects of **stultifying** routine work.

A **surveyor's** occupation is **surveying**.

Some of them **survey** land, and some **survey** buildings  
 or other things.

**30** Some land near a city may be laid out as **allotments**,  
 also called **allotment gardens** E/A **community gardens**  
 that people can rent, and originally **intended** for people  
**to** grow vegetables on in their free time.

An allotment may include an **allotment house** originally  
**intended** only for week-end or seasonal **accommodation**,  
 and nowadays often just used as a **summer house** / **home**.

The renters may be organized in an **allotment association**.

With a **crunch** of gravel under their feet, the renters use  
 their **rakes** to **rake** the paths, and **rake** ( ) **up** dead leaves.

\* skodde > \* cigaret  
 \* den ene efter den anden =  
 \* skodder \* vidne om at -  
 \* skodde / udrydde / gøre en ende på ngt.  
 \* være vidne til >  
 \* ikke tidligere indtruffen / stedfunden ( stigning )  
 ~ uden fortilfælde  
 \* undersøge > \* virkning af ngt. >  
 \* på ng.  
 \* spørgeundersøgelse af ng.  
 \*  
 \* institution for << \* laver / udføre >  
 \* spørgeundersøgelse \* af ngt.  
 \* opfundet / bestemt ( spørgsmål )  
 \* udarbejde > \* spørgeskema  
 \*  
 \* udfylde ... \* ... >  
 \* ... om > \* alt mellem himmel og jord  
 \* vise / afsløre at -  
 \* forbindelse / sammenhæng mellem ngt.  
 \* i en spørgeundersøgelse af ng.  
 \*  
 \* bevidne ngt.  
 \* svar fra > \* rundspørge \* afspejle ngt.  
 \* åndssløvende \* monoton, \* ( arbejds-) rutiner  
 ( virkning ) ensformig  
 \* vidne om > \* åndssløvende \* rutine ( arbejde )  
 \* landmåler, bygningsinspektør \* ~ tagen overblik  
 vurderingsmand vurdering, opmåling  
 \* opmåle ngt. \* vurdere ngt.  
 \*  
 \* ~ kolonihave  
 \* =  
 \* beregnet til ng.  
 \* til at -  
 \* kolonihavehus  
 \* beregnet til > \* ~ husly, beboelse  
 \* sommerhus  
 \* kolonihaveforening  
 \* knasen af ( grus )  
 \* rive \* rive ( sti ) \* rive ngt. ~ sammen

## THE VICAR

<b>734 The clergy</b> is the body of <b>ordained</b> persons of a religion	* gejstligheden	* ordineret
as distinguished from <b>the laity</b> , the <b>worshippers</b> .	* lægfolket	* indviet
As official leaders of religious activities in organized religions,		* tilbeder
members of the clergy are called <b>priests, ecclesiastics,</b>	* præst	* gejstlig
<b>clerics, clergymen, and clergywomen.</b>	* = * ( mandlig ) præst * ( kvindelig ) præst	
<b>Rabbis</b> belong to the Jewish clergy, <b>ministers, pastors,</b>	* rabbiner	* præst af en art
<b>churchmen</b> and <b>churchwomen</b> belong to the Christian clergy	* mandlig kristen gejstlig	* kvindelig ...
while <b>mullahs</b> and <b>imams</b> belong to the Islamic clergy.	* mullah	* imam
The <b>Church of England</b> ( CE or C. of E. ) is the official	* =	
<b>10 Church in England</b> , whose leader is the King or Queen.	*	
The <b>Archbishop</b> of Canterbury is the <b>chief</b> bishop.	* ærke-	* øverste
<b>Continuous with</b> English history, the Church of England	* fortløbende med	
is Catholic in faith and order, but incorporating many	* indlemme ngt.	
<b>emphases</b> ( sg: <sis ) of the Protestant Reformation	* betoning	
and establishing independence from the <b>papacy</b> .	* vigtig betydning	
The <b>Anglican Church</b> is <b>grounded</b> by the <b>Anglican</b>	* anglikansk	* grundlægge
<b>Communion</b> , the <b>fellowship</b> of the <b>Church of England</b> ,	* fællesskab	* fællesskab
the <b>Church of Wales</b> , the <b>Church of Ireland</b> ,	* walisiske kirke	* irske kirke
the <b>Episcopal Church</b> of <b>Scotland</b> ,	* biskoppelig skotske kirke	
<b>20</b> and the <b>Protestant Episcopal Church</b> in the US.	* protestantiske biskoppelige kirke	
The <b>bishops</b> are <b>at the head</b> of the <b>episcopacy</b>	* biskop	* i spidsen for
and of the <b>episcopalians</b> .	* medlem af ...	* biskoppeligt styre
The <b>chief</b> church of the <b>diocese</b> is the <b>cathedral</b> ,	* hoved-	* bispedømme
where the bishop has his <b>see</b> .	* bispesæde	* katedral
Ranking just below the bishops are the <b>archdeacons</b>	* ærkedomprovst	
in head of the <b>deans</b> .	* domprovst	
A dean is in charge of the other priests in a cathedral	*	
or in charge of the priests of several churches (E: <b>rural `dean</b> ).	* provst	
A <b>rector</b> in his <b>rectory</b> is in charge of a <b>parish</b> church,	* sognepræst	* -ebolig
<b>30</b> in the old days supported by a <b>tithe</b> from each farm.	* (skoleleder)	* sognekirke
A <b>vicar</b> in his <b>vicarage</b> used to act for another person	* tiende	
or <b>body</b> for whom or which the tithe was <b>payable</b> .	* sognepræst	* -ebolig
	* organisation	* betalingsskyldig

**735** A **deacon** ranks next below the priest.

**Deputed to** assist or represent a rector or vicar,  
di'pju~tid

a **curate** is a priest employed as an assistant or **deputy**  
`kjuêrêt `deputi  
of a rector or vicar.

A **chaplain officiates** ( **at** ) religious duties outside  
`t\$aplin ê fi\$ieits  
the church, in a **chapel** or elsewhere e.g. in the way of

**army chaplain.**

A **parish clerk** does **clerical work** for a church.

klâ~k E/A klê~k `klerikaêl

Members of the parish elect a body of lay representatives

**10** to the **parochial church council** that administers

the affairs of the parish such as electing the people

**working for**, or **attached** to the parish church.

The **church books** are used as **service books**,

a **parish register**, or the like.

A **churchwarden** is chosen by the members of the church  
to take care of church property and money.

In some Protestant churches a **minister** or a **pastor**  
is a priest in charge of a church, or a pastor is someone  
having spiritual care of a number of persons.

**20** The church officially makes someone a priest or religious  
leader by ( **an** ) **ordination**.

The church **ordains seminary students (as)** priests –  
â~`deinz  
as **clerks of the holy order** or **`ministers of religion**,

and **ordain** clerics **to** ( **o-f** ) a higher office.

A young candidate **full of promise** is going to be **ordained**.

At his **ordination**, the newly graduated student,

a **promising** priest, **makes** a **confession of faith**.

Solemnly, he **confesses** his **faith**.

As the church **imposes** an **obligation on** the priest,

**30** he is **obliged / obligated** to **`minister** wherever he is.  
ê`blaid\$ðd `âbligeitid

A priest **is under an obligation**; he is **under an obligation**

**to preach** and **spread** the **Gospel**.

He **has** another **obligation**; he **has** an **obligation to**

**minister to the weak**: the poor, the sick, and the old.

Having **assumed** a number of **duties**, a Christian priest

**has a duty to preach** and **spread** the **Gospel to** all mankind.

So **having a duty to** ( **<wards** ) anyone, **it's** a priest's **duty**

**to work** as a priest everywhere and all the time.

\* hjælpepræst

\* bemyndige ng. til at -

\* kapellan

\* stedfortræder

\*

\* kapelpræst

\* gøre tjeneste ved / forrette ngt.

\* kapel

\* ~ feltpræst

\* kordegn

\* kontorarbejde

\*

\* sogne-

\* kirke-

\* råd

~ menighedsråd

\* arbejde ( som ansat ) for ng.

\* tilknyttet ng.

\* kirkebog

\* alterbog

\* sogneregister

\* lignende

\* kirkevæрге

\*

\* præst

\* pastor  
præst

\*

\*

\*

\* ordination

præstevielse

\* ordinere / indvie ng. > \* præstestuderende \* til ngt.

\* lærd af den hellige orden

\* religionens tjener

\* ordinere ng. til ngt.

\* ~ lovende

\* ordonere / præstevie ng.

\* ordination, præstevielse

\* lovende

\* aflægge trosbekendelse

\* bekende sin tro

\* pålægge ng. en forpligtelse

\* være forpligtet til at -

\* tjene / virke som præst

\* være pålagt en forpligtelse

\* ... >

\* til at - \* prædike ngt.

\* sprede /  
udbrede ngt.

\* evangeliet

\* have en ... forpligtelse

\* ... til at -

\* yde hjælp til ng.

\* de svage

\* påtge sig >

\* pligt

\* have en pligt til at -

\* prædike / udbrede evangeliet  
til ng.

\* forpligtelse overfor ng.

\* ~ er det ngs. pligt >

\* at -

**736** As the candidate **makes** a **vow** of **fidelity to** the Lord,  
he **vows** eternal faithfulness, and **makes a vow** ( that )  
he will **honour** his **obligation**.

He **vows that** he will do his best to **keep** his **vow**.

As he solemnly **vows to meet / fulfil** his **obligation**,  
he **makes a promise to** the Lord.

He **makes a promise that** he will always serve the Lord  
and **makes a promise** always **to do** his **duty**.

As he **makes** his **promise of** faithfulness,

**10** he **promises** faithfulness.

He **promises** faithfulness **to** the Lord.

He **promises** the Lord faithfulness.

As he **promises to** be faithful to the Lord,  
he **promises to** serve the Lord.

As he **promises** ( that ) he will **do** his **duty for** the Lord,  
he **promises** Him ( that ) he will **do** his **duty as** a priest.

' You **have** my **solemn promise**, ' he concludes.

For various reasons, some priests **break** their **promise**.

It's said that ' **the spirit indeed is willing but the flesh**

**20 is weak** ' so **time ( alone ) will tell** whether a priest  
**fails to do** his **duty** and **fails in** his **duty**.

As it's said that ' **promises** are like **piecrust made to be**  
**broken** ', **only time will tell** if he **fails to keep** his **promise**,

Having **entered ministry ( of the church )**,  
ordained priests are **invested with sacerdotal** functions,  
sasé`dèutl  
and authorized to **hold / conduct** ( church ) **services**.

**It's** a priest's **moral duty to minister among** mankind,  
believers as well as disbelievers.

**Having a moral obligation to** serve the Lord,

**30** a priest **is** morally **obliged / obligated to minister to**  
people in distress.

As a **dutiful** servant of God and a **duteous** member  
of the **priesthood**, the priest **feels obliged / obligated to**  
**minister to** the **wants** and **needs** of people in distress.

A true Christian **has a moral obligation towards**  
**the underprivileged** so a Christian is expected to  
`**help** the weak **out of a sense of obligation** (U).

As a **bounden** (o-f) `**duty**, it's a Christian's **bounden duty**.

\* aflægge en troskabsed til ng.

\* sværge ngt. \* aflægge ed på at -

\* honorere / leve op til sin forpligtelse  
gøre sin pligt

\* sværge på at - \* holde sit løfte

\* sværge på at - \* imødekomme / \* forpligtelse  
opfylde >

\* aflægge / fremsætte > \* løfte til ng.

\* ... om at -

\* = \* gøre sin pligt

\* aflægge / fremsætte sit løfte ongt.

\* love ngt.

\* ... til ng.

\* ... ng. ngt.

\* ... at være ngt.

\* ... at gøre ngt. \* prædike \* evangeliet

\* love at - \* gøre sin pligt overfor ng.

\* ... ng. at - \* ... pligt som ng.

\* ~ have ng's æresord

\* bryde sit løfte

\* ~ ånden er redebon, men kødet er >

\* skrøbeligt \* ( kun ) tiden vil vise

\* forsømme / \* gøre sin pligt \* svigte ...  
undlade at -

\* løfte \* tæteskorpe \* skabt til at >  
( ~ loven er ærlig, holden besværlig )

\* brydes \* forsømme / \* holde sit løfte  
undlade at -

\* træde ind i > \* ~ præstegerningen

\* ( blive ) udstyret med ngt. \* præstelig

\* holde > \* gudstjeneste

\* være ngs. \* moralsk pligt at - \* gøre præste- /  
velgerning blandt ng.

\*

\* have en > \* moralsk \* forpligtelse til at -

\* være forpligtet til at - \* tjene / være ng. til tjeneste  
~ være præst for ng.

\*

\* pligtopfydende \* =  
lydig

\* præsteskab \* føle sig forpligtet til at -

\* være behjælpelig overfor ngt. \* ønsker og behov

\* have en moralsk forpligtelse overfor ng.

\* de underprivilegerede

\* hjælpe ng. \* af en følelse af ngt. \* forpligtelse  
( ~ af pligtfølelse )

\* en / ngs. moralsk bunden pligt



**738** The vicar **feels obliged / obligated to do pastoral work**  
/ **minister** outside the church and the congregation.

He **pays / makes** many of the / his **parishioners** a **call**.  
pê ri\$ênêz

**Paying / making a call** ( on the / his parishioners ),

he takes care never to **wear`out** his **welcome**.

**It's** his legal **duty** to **hold / conduct** Sunday **services**,  
as well as **baptismal, marriage, funeral, commemoration**  
bap`tizmêl  
or **memorial services**, and carry out other **pastoral duties**.

Besides **preaching** to the congregation, the vicar

**10** has a moral **duty** to **preach** and **spread** the Gospel to  
everybody in the community.

The church reckons with his **devotion to duty**,  
and the congregation reckons with his **devotion** to them.

The vicar **takes up duty** at the first of May.

The clear sky **promises** summer,  
as he and his wife move into the vicarage.

A priest must be **communicative**.

-`ni -  
He must **have** good **communication skills**,

and be able to **communicate effectively** to the congregation.

**20** Even if **non-verbal communication** is important,

**the spoken word** is the main **means** of **communication**.

Speech is a fast **way** of **communication between** people.

Lucky to be gifted with **com`municative** skills, the vicar is  
as an **eloquent** speaker, able to make an **eloquent** speech.

The vicar writes down his ideas for his first sermon.

While the spoken word is brief, **evanescent, fleeting**,  
evê nesênt  
**passing**, and **transient**, **the written word** is **lasting**.

Even if he's eager to **communicate** his ideas of Christianity  
**to** the world, he knows the importance of being patient,

**30** and **lenient**, **doing things gently** and **watching** his **step**.

His **first priority** is to **communicate with** the congregation,  
not **by one-way communication from** the **pulpit** but by  
-`-  
**two-way communication with** people all over the parish.

**In the first place**, the vicar **makes contact with**  
the parish clerk.

They spend their evening drinking wine,  
**exchanging** and **sharing confidences**.

The vicar and the clerk become each other's **confidants**.

`kânfidants / -`dâ~nts

\* føle sig forpligtet til at \* udføre præstearbejde

\* =

\* aflægge ng. > \* indbygger i sognet \* et besøg  
sognebarn

\* aflægge et besøg ( hos ng. )

\* ~ blive længere end man er velkommen

\* det er ngs. ... pligt at \* holde ... gudstjeneste

\* dåbs- \* bryllups- \* begravelses- \* minde-

\* minde- \* gudstjeneste \* præste- \* pligt

\* prædike til ng.

\* ... en moralsk pligt til at \* prædike / sprede ngt. til ng.

\*

\* pligttroskab

\* hengivenhed overfor ng.

\* tiltræde i tjeneste / en stilling

\* love ngt.

\*

\* meddelsom

\* kommunikationsevner

\* kommunikere /  
meddele sig til til ng.

\* non-verbal kommunikation

\* det talte ord \* kommunikations- / meddelelsesmiddel

\* kommunikationsmåde / meddelelsesvej mellem ng.

\* kommunikativ, meddelelsesmæssig

\* veltalende ( taler ) \* veltalt / udtryksfuld ( tale )

\*

\* flygtig

\* =

\* = \* = \* skrevne ord \* vedvarende

\* kommunikere / meddele / videregive ngt. >

\* til ng.

\* mild / \* gøre tingene forsigtigt \* vare sine skridt  
skånsom ( ~ gå forsigtigt til værks, fare med lempe )  
\* første prioritet \* kommunikere med

\* envejskommunikation

\* fra prædikestolen

\* tovejs- ... med ng

\* i første omgang

\* etablere kontakt til ng.

\*

\*

\* udveksle >

\* dele >

\* fortroligheder

\* fortrolig

<b>739</b> The clerk tells the vicar about the previous vicar,	*
and about how he <b>ministered</b> in the parish.	* udføre præstegerning
The previous vicar's <b>preaching</b> had become more	* prædikening
and more <b>condemnatory</b> .	* fordømmende
He used to threaten the congregation with <b>damnation</b>	* fortabelse
and <b>eternal punishment</b> if anyone dared to <b>stand up to</b> him,	* evig straf                      * trodse / sætte sig op mod ng.
and <b>defy</b> his <b>authority</b> invested by <b>the Almighty God</b> .	* ... ngs. autoritet                      * Gud den Almægtige
Afraid to <b>suffer</b> the <b>tortures of the damned</b> , a great part	* lide de fordømtes pinsler
of the congregation had <b>danced to</b> the previous vicar's <b>pipe</b> .	* danse efter ngs. pibe
<b>10</b> As they didn't dare to <b>stand against</b> the vicar	* trodse / sætte sig op imod ng.
and <b>challenge</b> his <b>authority</b> , the rest of the congregation	* udfordre ngs. autoritet
had only <b>dutifully been at / attended</b> (the) <b>service</b> .	* pligtskyldigt    * deltage i / overvære    * gudstjeneste
Even if they dared not <b>stand against / up to</b> his <b>authority</b> ,	* sætte sig op imod >                      * autoritet
most of the congregation had, however, gradually	*
<b>lost</b> ( their ) <b>confidence in</b> both the vicar and the church.	* miste tilliden til ng. / ngt. ( sin tillid )
The vicar was met only with <b>dutiful</b> greetings.	* pligtskyldig
Suddenly the vicar had been <b>transferred</b> .	* forflytte ng.
Nobody had had any information why but the whole affair	*
had left a general <b>lack of confidence in</b> the church.	* mangel på tillid til ng. / ngt.
<b>20</b> The vicar had <b>undermined, destroyed, and shattered</b>	* underminere >                      * ødelægge >                      * =
( the congregation's ) <b>confidence in</b> the church.	* tilliden til ng. / ngt. ( ngs. tillid til ng. / ngt. )
The parish clerk never felt able to <b>confide in</b> the old vicar.	* have tillid til ng.
The clerk <b>confides to</b> the new vicar.	* betro sig til ng.
He <b>confides</b> his suspicions <b>to</b> him.	* ... ngt. til ng.
He <b>confides to</b> the new vicar <b>that</b> he suspects	* betro ng. at -
the previous vicar of being a <b>child abuser / molester</b> .	* børnemisbruger
The clerk <b>is confident</b> ( that ) the previous vicar has	* være overbevist om at -
<b>abused / molested</b> some of the <b>choirboys</b> .	* misbruge ng. ( seksuelt )                      * kordreng
<sup>`kwaiêbâiz</sup> The parish clerk <b>has confidence in</b> the new vicar.	* have tillid til ng.
<b>30</b> He <b>has</b> every <b>confidence in</b> him,	* ... ( al mulig ) ...
and the vicar <b>has</b> absolute <b>confidence</b> in the parish clerk,	* ... ( fuld ) ...
and complete <b>confidence in</b> his analysis of the situation.	* ... til ngt.
Having ( every etc.) <b>confidence</b> ( that ) he will be supported	* have tillid til at -
by the clerk, the vicar decides to investigate the matter.	*
As he <b>is confident of</b> the clerk's support,	* være overbevist om ngt.
and <b>is confident of</b> having his support <b>all the way</b> ,	* - - - at -                      * hele vejen
he <b>is confident</b> ( that ) he will be supported <b>the whole way</b> .	* =                      * =
<b>Confident about</b> his skills and <b>confident about</b> himself,	* overbevist om / sikker på ngt.
he is <b>confident about</b> the future.	* fortrosthingsfuld mht. ngt.

<b>740</b> In order to <b>gain / win</b> the <b>confidence</b> of the congregation,	* vinde ngs. tillid
the vicar talks to them <b>in</b> their own <b>language</b> (C).	* på ( ngs. eget ) sprog
To <b>make it clear that</b> he doesn't <b>feel superior to</b> anybody,	* gøre det klart at * føle sig hævet over ng.
he never talks to people <b>in self-important pompous literary</b>	* selvhøjtidelig * pompøs * boglig
or <b>ecclesiastical language</b> (U).	* højtravende * kirkelig * sprogbrug
ikli~zi`astikl <b>Communicating face to face</b> with people, he always	* kommunikere * ansigt til ansigt
<b>talks ordinary / everyday / colloquial language.</b>	* tale hverdagssprog
Even if the vicar seems an <b>outstanding</b> priest	* enestående
<b>with tremendous confidence in</b> his own abilities,	* med > * enorm * tillid / tiltro til ngt.
<b>10</b> he is regarded with general <b>mistrust</b> in the first place.	* mistillid / -tro
Even though the new priest is met with <b>distrust</b> ,	* =
he keeps <b>having confidence in</b> himself.	* have tillid til sig selv / ~ selvtillid
<b>Sure of himself, sure that</b> he can do things well,	* sikker på sig selv * sikker på at -
the <b>self-confident</b> vicar <b>proceeds working on</b>	* selvsikker * arbejde videre på ngt.
the <b>delicate matter.</b>	* ømtålelig sag
<b>Due to the force of</b> his <b>personality</b> , the vicar's	* i kraft af > * ( sin ) personlighed
<b>faith and confidence in humanity</b> soon, however,	* tro på ngt. * tiltro til ngt * medmenneskelighed
<b>communicates itself to</b> everybody he gets in contact with.	* brede sig til / ~ smitte af på ng.
His <b>communicating</b> openly <b>about</b> the problems <b>gives</b>	* kommunikere om ngt. * give ng. >
<b>20</b> the members of the congregation as well as the vicar	*
<b>a lot of confidence, and increased confidence.</b>	* en masse > * selvtillid * øget ...
The vicar <b>has confidence</b> ( that ) / <b>is confident</b> ( that )	* have tillid til at / være overbevist om at
he can <b>win</b> the <b>confidence</b> of the congregation.	* vinde ngs. tillid
He is <b>confident of</b> ( winning ) their confidence.	* overbevist om at
Gradually, the vicar <b>earns</b> the congregation's <b>confidence.</b>	* gøre sig fortjent til / oparbejde ngs. tillid
As the vicar's straightforwardness <b>boosts / increases</b>	* øge ngs. >
the <b>confidence of</b> the congregation, he succeeds in	* selvtillid
<b>boosting / increasing</b> (their) <b>confidence in</b> him.	* øge ( ngs. tillid ) tilliden til ng.
As he manages to <b>restore</b> the <b>confidence</b> of the congre>	* genskabe ngs. tillid
<b>30</b> gation, he succeeds in <b>restoring</b> (their) <b>confidence in</b>	* ... til ng. / ngt.
the local church.	*
Eventually, the congregation <b>has confidence in</b> the vicar.	* få / have tillid til ng.
<b>Dressed in</b> his <b>priest's robe(s)</b> , the vicar speaks to	* klædt i > * præstekjole
his parishioners in calm, <b>confident</b> and <b>(self-) assured</b> voice.	* selvsikker * =
<b>Assured of</b> a warm welcome at home visits,	* forsikret om / sikker på ngt.
the vicar <b>is confident of</b> ( getting ) a <b>heartfelt</b> welcome.	* overbevist om / sikker på ( at ) ngt. * hjertlig
The vicar takes care not to become <b>overconfident</b> ,	* overselvtillidsfuld
<b>cocky and brash.</b>	* skidt vigtig * & pågående kæphøj højrøstet

<b>741</b> Besides his <b>duty calls</b> , the vicar <b>pays / makes a call on</b> each of the families of the choirboys.	* pligtbesøg	* aflægge ( et ) besøg hos ng.
Familiar with the <b>parochialism</b> of a small community, <small>pê`rëukiêlizêm</small>	* ~ provinsialisme, indskrænkethed	
the vicar accepts to be dealing with <b>parochial</b> issues.	* ~ provinsiel, indskrænket ( emne )	
<b>Out on calls</b> , he notices, however, that even at their homes some of the choirboys seem to be very <b>insecure</b> .	* ude på besøg	
Very <b>unsure of themselves</b> , some of them <b>in particular</b> seem to <b>lack confidence / be lacking in confidence</b> .	* usikker	
The vicar's sense of justice <b>inspires confidence</b> .	* usikker på sig selv	* i særdeleshed især
<b>10</b> As the vicar <b>inspires confidence</b> in the choirboys, some of them <b>confides to</b> the vicar <b>that</b> they have been abused.	* mangle selvtillid	
The boys <b>gain ( in ) confidence</b> as the vicar <b>lifts a burden from</b> their <b>shoulders</b> .	* indgyde >	* selvtillid
They begin to <b>feel confident (that)</b> they have done nothing wrong.	* indgyde selvtillid i ng.	
Eventually they feel free to <b>unburden</b> themselves.	* betro ng. at -	
As they <b>unburden</b> their <b>hearts / minds</b> , their <b>confidence</b> begins to <b>grow</b> .	* befri ng. for en byrde	
In an obscene act of cruelty, the <b>nasty</b> vicar had,	* <<	
<b>20</b> one by one, <b>abused</b> the choirboys' <b>confidence</b> .	* føle sig sikker på at -	
Not only had this unscrupulous <b>paedophile</b> E/A <b>pedophile</b> <small>`pi~dêfail</small> molested the young boys, but on top of it all,	*	
this <b>disgusting, loathsome, and repulsive</b> child <b>abuser</b> <small>`lëudsêm</small> had <b>filled</b> them with a <b>sense of fear, shame, and guilt</b> , and threatened them to keep quiet. <i>Look at page 800 !!</i>	* lette sit hjerte tale ud	
The <b>traumatizing</b> effects of <b>abuse / molestation</b> , <small>mâle`stie\$ñ</small> and threats of <b>reprisal(s)</b> had <b>shaken</b> the boys' <b>confidence</b> as well as they had <b>damaged</b> their <b>confidence in</b> adults.	* =	* selvtillid
The vicar <b>goes to see / looks up</b> their parents.	* vokse	
<b>30</b> As he offers his help and support with <b>empathy</b> , <small>`empê#i</small> his pity and sympathy for the boys <b>communicate itself to / rub off onto / infect</b> the unhappy parents.	* modbydelig, ækel onskabsfuld	
The vicar is very <b>accommodating / obliging</b> . <small>ê`kâmêdeiting</small>	* misbruge ngs. tillid	
' Can I be of any help ? he asks <b>obligingly</b> , usually <b>carrying</b> his bible <b>with</b> him.	* pædofil	
Every Christian <b>has obligations to(wards)</b> their fellow men.	*	
Helpfulness is an <b>obligation</b> any Christian <b>owes to</b> their <b>fellow human beings / fellow creatures</b> .	* frastødende, modbydelig * = * = * misbruger væmmelig	
	* fylde ng. med en følelse af frygt, skam-, skyldfølelse	
	*	
	* traumatiserende * ( børne- ) misbrug / overgreb	
	* gengældelse (-sforanstaltninger, repressalier )	
	* ødelægge ngs. tillid til ng.	
	* opsøge ng.	
	* empati	
	* brede sig til >	
	* smitte af på / påvirke ng.	
	* hjælpsom, tjenstvillig	
	* hjælpsomt	
	* bære rundt på / medbringe ngt.	
	* have forpligtelser overfor ng	
	* forpligtelse	* skyldte ng. ngt.
	* medmenneske	

**742** One Sunday the vicar is going to hold his first service,  
and **preach in the church** for the first time.

As he has previously worked as a **curate**,  
he has **preached at a ( church ) service** a few times before.

So standing in front of his first day of holding a sermon  
in this church, he doesn't **feel** completely **naked**.

**Giving / preaching / delivering a sermon**, it's his duty to  
**preach the word of God to** the congregation, but he finds it  
difficult to **give a sermon on this delicate** matter.

**10** He finds it **delicate** to **preach ( to the congregation )**

**about** humanity and forgiveness on this occasion,

and **say with confidence that** God is good ?

It seems there are **rotten / bad apples in** any community,  
and a **black sheep in every flock**.

So the vicar decides to **preach on wariness**.

He will **preach about** the dangers of lust, desire,  
and **covetousness**, and teach the congregation to **be wary of**  
temptations **lurking** (vi) and **luring** (vt) us everywhere.

We must **be wary of** flatter and **siren call / song / voices**,  
**20** and parents must be **wary of confiding** their children to  
strangers, **to** other people's **charge** and **to** their **care**.

We must always **be wary of black sheep in the flock**,  
and **keep a wary eye on self-righteous preachers**.

A **fire-and-brimstone preacher** may have **skeletons in**  
the **cupboards**, as well as a **sanctimonious** preacher  
may have a **skeleton in the cupboard**, and appear to be  
a **rotten / bad apple or wolf in sheep's clothing**.

Filled with **self-confidence**, the vicar works out his  
Sunday sermon.

**30 Acting as** he **thinks best**, he has confidence enough  
not just to **preach to the converted / the choir**.

Although he's a bit **wary of** preaching about forgiveness,  
the rest of sermon is on the **parable of the repentant sinner**.

The vicar **is confident** ( that ) he has gained the confidence  
of the congregation.

He **has every confidence** ( that ) the **manuscript of**  
his sermon will be **completed satisfactorily on time**.

He **is confident** ( that ) his sermon will **be well received**.

\*  
\* prædike i ...  
\* hjælpepræst  
\* i en kirke \* ved en gudstjeneste  
\*  
\* føle sig hjælpeløs  
\* holde en prædiken  
\* prædike ngt. til ng. \* guds ord  
\* holde en prædiken om ngt. \* ømtålelig  
\* = \* prædike ( til ng. ) >  
\* om ngt.  
\* sige med overbevisning at  
\* ~ brodne kar  
\* & brodne kar alle vegne  
\* prædike om > \* vagtsomhed  
\* =  
\* begærlighed \* være agtpågivende /  
på vagt overfor ngt.  
\* lure \* lokke ng.  
ligge på lur  
\* << \* sirene > \* kald / sang / stemmer  
~ lokketoner  
\* på vagt overfor at / når man \* betro ng&t. til ng.  
\* til ngs. varetægt \* til ngs. omsorg  
\* være på vagt overfor  
\* holde et vagtsomt \* selvretfærdig \* prædikant  
øje med ng.  
\* ild-og-svovl \* = \* have skeletter i >  
( helvedesprædikant )  
\* skabet \* skinhellig  
\* = skeletter i skabet  
\* ~ brådne kar \* en ulv i fåreklæder  
\* selvtillid  
\*  
\* handle efter sin bedste overbevisning  
\* prædike for de omvendte  
\* på vagt overfor at -  
\* lignelse om ngt. \* angrende synder  
\* være sikker på at -  
\*  
\* have ( fuld ) tiltro til at - \* manuskript til ngt.  
\* færdiggøre \* tilfredsstillende \* til tiden  
\* være overbevist om / \* blive godt modtaget  
tro sig sikker på at - falde i god jord

<b>743</b> Many churches have a <b>church tower</b> which may also be	* kirketårn	
a <b>bell tower</b> , or <b>belfry</b> with a <b>church bell</b> , and big churches	* klokketårn	* kirkeklokke
may have several towers, <b>steeples</b> and bells.	* spir, tårn med spir	
The <b>sexton</b> and perhaps a <b>bell-ringer</b> climb the bell tower.	* kirkebetjent	* ( frivillig ) klokker, ringer
They ring the bells some time before the ( <b>church</b> ) <b>service</b> .	* ~ gudstjeneste	
The church bells in the church tower ring and <b>clang</b>	* klinge, bimle drøne, runge	
in order to summon the congregation.	*	
<b>Parishioners</b> and occasionally a few <b>extra-parochial</b>	* indbygger i sognet	* udensogns
<b>churchgoers</b> set out to <b>go to / attend church</b> .	sognebarn * kirkegænger	* gå i kirke
<b>10</b> At (the) <b>service</b> the priests wear <b>ecclesiastical</b> garments.	* ved gudstjeneste(n)	* tilkaldet-hørende ~ gejstlig ( klæder )
So <b>before</b> (a / the) service the <b>vicar</b> in his parish,	* sognepræst	
and the <b>rector</b> in the neighbouring parish,	* =	* iklæde sig / tage ngt. på
<b>put on</b> their <b>cassock</b> and <b>clerical collar</b> .	* præstekjole	* præsteflip
The vicar's wife helps fastening the <b>dog collar</b> at the back.	* = ( hundehalsbånd )	
In some Churches, the priest <b>wears</b> a <b>clergyman's ruff</b> .	* bære / gå med >	* præste- ( pipe- ) krave
The churchgoers go up the <b>aisle</b> in the middle of the <b>nave</b> ,	* ( midter-) gang	* kirkeskib
and <b>take</b> a <b>seat on</b> one of the <b>pews</b> .	* tage plads	* kirkebænk
<b>Officiating</b> at his first <b>service</b> , the vicar sets about	* forestå / forrette gudstjeneste	
<b>performing</b> the <b>devotions</b> (pl.), that is ( to say ) prayers	* udføre >	* andagt / -s-øvelser
<b>20</b> and other religious practices.	*	
He seems to <b>be full of / have poise</b> and <b>confidence</b> .	* fuld af ro / have ro over sig være i ligevægt	* selvtilid
<b>Poised</b> and <b>confident</b> , he begins / <b>prefaces</b> the religious	* afbalanceret	* selvsikker
ceremony <b>by / with</b> ( an ) <b>invocation</b> of God before the altar.	* ligevægtig, rolig * ved / med >	* & indlede ngt. > * ( en ) påkaldelse af ng.
Having invoked the Lord, the vicar <b>prefaces</b> the prayer	* indlede ngt. >	
<b>by</b> saying ' <b>Let us pray</b> .'	* ved at -	* lad os ( alle ) bede
Facing an image of Jesus Christ at the <b>alterpiece</b> ,	* altertavle	
the vicar prays <b>with bowed head</b> .	* med bøjet hoved	
Prayer is a form of <b>communion with</b> God.	* indre samtale med ng.	
During their prayer, people <b>commune with</b> God.	* føre en ...	
<b>30</b> A painting shows <b>Virgin Mary cradling</b> the <b>Infant Jesus</b>	* Jomfru Maria	* bære / holde ngt. ( som i en vugge )
in her arms.	*	* jesusbarnet
An <b>icon</b> or <b>ikon</b> is a painting, <b>enamel</b> , etc. or other	* ikon	* emailje
representation of some sacred personage as Christ or a <b>saint</b>	* helgen	
or an angel, itself <b>thought of as</b> a holy object and <b>venerated</b>	* betragte som	* højagte ære
as sacred in the Greek or Russian Orthodox Church.	*	
A saint is a person of exceptional holiness of life, formally	*	
recognized and <b>canonized</b> by the Christian Church as	* kanonisere ng.	
having <b>attained</b> an <b>exalted</b> position in heaven.	* opnå ngt.	* ophøjet

<b>744</b> The <b>choirboys</b> , members of the <b>boys' choir</b> sit and wait in the <b>choir</b> .	* kordreng	* drengekor
Dressed in <b>clerical</b> garments, standing in front of the congregation, the <b>cantor</b> together with the <b>church choir</b> sing <b>at particular points</b> of the service.	* kor * kalds-, ~ gejstlig * kantor * på særlige tidspunkter	* kirkekor
They sing <b>choral songs</b> , <b>at times in several voice parts</b> and, at times, <b>in chorus</b> .	* korsang * i kor ( unisont / samtidigt )	* flerstemmig
A <b>soloist</b> sings the verses <b>solo</b> and the rest <b>join in</b> the <b>chorus</b> .	* solist * kor ( fællessang / omkvæd ) * i et kor	* solo * slutte sig til / falde ind i ngt.
<b>10</b> Some people enjoy singing <b>with a choir / chorus</b> .	* korpige * gruppe	* mandlig korartist
( A <b>chorus girl</b> or <b>chorus boy</b> is a performer who sings and dances with a <b>group</b> in a show or film. )	* på et bestemt tidspunkt * prædikestol * i ...	* bestige ngt. * holde prædiken * holde >
<b>At a certain point</b> of the service, the vicar <b>ascends</b> the <b>pulpit</b> to <b>give / preach / deliver</b> a <b>sermon</b> .	* en prædiken til ng. om ngt. * den kristne lære * basere sig på / dreje sig om ngt.	
Standing in the <b>pulpit</b> , he <b>gives / preaches / delivers</b> a <b>sermon</b> to the congregation <b>on</b> the actual topic seen in the light of the <b>teaching</b> of the <b>Christian Church</b> .	* det omdrejningspunkt, omkring hvilket > * drejer sig * fra prædikestolen * overbringe ngt. til ng. * * * holde en prædiken om ngt. * sorte får * * give ng. > * selvtillid til at - * slå hovedet på sømmet * meddele hvem -	* gerninger
His sermons <b>pivot on / around</b> the Gospel, and his sermons are the <b>pivot ( point ) on / around which</b> <b>20</b> the rest of his <b>works turn / revolve</b> .		
As he preaches the Gospel <b>from</b> the <b>pulpit</b> , he tries to <b>communicate</b> the Christian message <b>to</b> the congregation by comparing the parables of the New Testament to events from everyday life.		
So he <b>gives</b> a <b>sermon on</b> the sad fact that there may be <b>black sheep</b> (pl.) even within the flock of clerics.		
Lots of preliminary communication with people within the congregation and the rest of the community <b>gives</b> the vicar the <b>confidence to</b> preach / deliver a sermon		
<b>30</b> which <b>hits</b> the <b>nail on</b> the <b>head</b> , and clearly <b>communicates who's</b> the black sheep.		
<b>During</b> (the) <b>service</b> , some children <b>have</b> a <b>hard time</b> sitting still and keeping quiet.	* under gudstjenesten * * celebrant, fejrende person * ~ nadver, altergang * deltage i > * fejnings- / festdeltager	* have en hård tid med / svært ved at - * lede > * ~ gudstjeneste * celebrering af > * nadveren * <<
As a <b>celebrant</b> , the priest <b>leads</b> the <b>church service</b> , esp. the <b>Communion service / celebration</b> of the <b>Eucharist</b> , and being <b>celebrants</b> too, laypeople <b>attend</b> a <b>church service</b> .		
In the US, a <b>celebrant</b> may just be <b>celebrating</b> ( anything ).		

**745** When the priest **celebrates Holy Communion**  
kê`mju~njên  
 people who **are at / attend** ( the ) **service** have the chance  
 to **go to Communion** to celebrate **Holy Sacrament** /  
 the **Eucharist** by **receiving** the **Sacrament / Eucharist**.  
`ju~kêrist

In Christian theology, a **sacrament** is a ritual having  
 a special significance as a visible sign of an inner ( state of )  
**grace** in its participants.

The Roman Catholic Church and Orthodox churches accept  
 seven sacraments: **baptism, confirmation, penance,**  
**10** the Eucharist, marriage / matrimony, **holy orders,**  
`matrimêni /A -mouni  
**extreme unction / anointing** of the sick or dying.

Baptism and the Eucharist are the only commonly accepted  
 Protestant sacraments.

People who **attend** (the) **service** and want to  
**take / receive communion** will **receive** the **Eucharist** -  
 the **bread** and **wine**, representing Christ's body and blood.

At the ( **celebration** of the ) **Eucharist, the Lord's Supper,**  
 the **communicants** eat the bread and drink the wine  
 in memory of **the Last Supper**, the last meal that Christ

**20** had with his **disciples**.  
di`saipêlz

The priest uses the **chalice**, a silver decorated cup,  
 for holding the **communion wine** and, as bread he gives  
 each of the communicants a **wafer** as **the Host**.  
`veifê

When (the) **service** is **at an end**, the vicar blesses  
 the congregation with the sign of the cross.

When (the) **service is over**, the churchgoers leave  
 the church walking down the aisle.

The nave **communicates with** the **porch**  
 by **communicating doors**.  
-`-`-

**30** After the **service**, the vicar stands in the doorway  
 and says goodbye.

Some people might **communicate** a message **to** him,  
 and shake hands with him.

Some people, however, avoid to shake hands as they are  
 afraid that a **communicable / infectious** disease might  
in`fek\$ês  
 this way be **communicated from** one person **to** another.

\* celebrere / holde > \* altergang  
 \* være til / deltage i gudstjeneste(-n)  
 \* gå til alters ( nadver ) \* ( fejre ) den hellige nadver  
 \* = \* modtage sakramenterne  
 \* sakramente  
 \*  
 \* ynde, ~ nådetilstand ( tilgivet ondskab og synd )  
 \*  
 \* dåb \* konfirmation \* bodshandling  
 \* hellig \* rangorden  
 \* sidste \* olie / salven  
 \*  
 \*  
 \* være til gudstjeneste  
 \* gå til alters \* ... nadverens sakramenter  
 ( modtage nadver )  
 \*  
 \* ( fejring af ngt. ) \* den hellige nadver  
 ( = altergang ) \* altergænger  
 \* nadver  
 \* den sidste nadver  
 \* discipel  
 \* alterkalk  
 \* altervin  
 \* alterbrød \* alterbrød  
 oblat  
 \* gudstjeneste \* ved at være forbi  
 \*  
 \* ... være forbi  
 \*  
 \* stå i forbindelse med \* våbenhus  
 \* mellemdør  
 \* efter gudstjenesten  
 \*  
 \* overbringe ngt. til ng.  
 \*  
 \*  
 \* smitsom  
 \* overføres / smitte fra ng. til ng.

<b>746</b> The vicar <b>communicates with</b> the see <b>by letter</b> about the matter.	* kommunikere med ng.	* per brev
Even if they <b>are in</b> regular <b>communication by mail</b> , the vicar receives only <b>non-committal</b> replies.	* kommunikation forbindelse * uforpligtende ( svar )	* per post
The see is <b>non-committal about</b> any kind of investigation and just <b>inform</b> him <b>that</b> the <b>case</b> has been <b>dropped on ( the ) grounds of insufficient evidence.</b>	* forholde sig uforpligtende overfor ngt. * informere ng. om at > * sag > * blevet opgivet * på grund af > * utilstrækkeligt * bevismateriale	
Then one Sunday, in the middle of the ringing of the bells, the ringing stops all of a sudden.		
<b>10</b> Everybody looks up with a <b>puzzled look on</b> their <b>face</b> . Everybody <b>has / wears</b> a puzzled <b>look / frown on</b> their <b>face</b> .	* uforstående forvirret, rådvild * have / bære rundt på ...	* blik udtryk * i ansigtet * panderynken
Everybody's <b>face wears</b> a puzzled <b>look</b> or <b>frown</b> . Wondering what has happened, the <b>verger</b> (eE) hurries up the tower.	* ngs. ansigt har et ... udtryk / udtrykker panderynken * kirkevæрге	
As he reaches the <b>belfry</b> , his <b>heart stops beating</b> at the the terrifying sight.	* klokkerum / -stillads * hjerte holder op med at slå	
<b>Dangling in</b> one of the ropes hangs the <b>sexton</b> , with an <b>eerie</b> look on his <b>distorted</b> face <b>racked by / with</b> pain.	* dingle i ngt. * uhyggelig * forvreden * forpint af ngt.	* kirkebetjent
<b>Horror-struck / -stricken</b> , the verger calls for help.	* rædselsslagen	
<b>20</b> Having cut down the <b>pitiable / pitiful</b> sexton, the vicar and the clerk, both <b>terror-stricken</b> , find a suicide letter / note.	* medynkvækkende * rædselsslagen	
It's a <b>confessional</b> letter / note in which the <b>pathetic</b> sexton <b>bares</b> the painful facts and <b>confesses to</b> having stealthily witnessed the old vicar's abuse of the choirboys in the <b>crypt</b> .	* bekendelses- * blotlægge / åbenbare ngt. * krypt	* medynkvækkende * bekende / tilstå at -
So the letter clearly <b>communicates what</b> has happened.	* meddele hvad -	
The sexton was known as a <b>dutiful</b> and <b>obliging</b> fellow who never <b>neglected</b> his <b>duty / duties</b> .	* pligtopfyldende * svigte sin pligt / sine pligter ikke passe sit arbejde * pligtforsømmelse	* & hjælpsom
A previous sexton had been fired for <b>neglect of duty</b> . <b>Tormented by</b> shame of having had sexual satisfaction,	* pint plaget * uudholdelig	
<b>30</b> the present sexton had felt that life was <b>unendurable</b> . <b>Racked by</b> guilt about having let the abuse pass on,	* pine / plage ng.	
and <b>worn`down</b> by a <b>bad / guilty conscience about</b> having <b>failed in</b> his <b>duty to</b> the victims, the sexton had felt that life was no longer <b>endurable</b> .	* nedbryde ng. * ikke leve op til sin forpligtelse pverfor ng. * udholdeligt	* dårlig samvittighed over ngt.
He died <b>in</b> the <b>line of duty</b> , but is <b>buried in private</b> . Finally, they have <b>sufficient</b> evidence of the previous vicar's molestation.	* under udførelse af sin pligt i tjenesten * tilstrækkelig	* i stilhed, uden offentlig- hedens tilstedeværelse
The vicar regards the letter as <b>definite</b> and <b>de`finitive</b> proof of the previous vicar's guilt.	* tydelig	* endegyldigt

**747** To prevent the matter from being **put into cold storage**,  
the vicar wants to **bring it to light**.

To prevent anyone from **shelving** the matter,  
he intends to **expose** it.

Acting with **admirable** and **justifiable confidence**,  
coping **admirably** with a difficult situation, he shows the letter  
to the local newspaper before handing it over to the police.

Good **communication** is vital for a well-functioning  
**community, collective** or **commune**.  
**10** The paper simply prints an exact copy of the letter

together with the **bare facts** of the case.

**The naked truth** about the vicar's abuses  
**causes / creates** great **excitement**.

It causes / creates **a great stir** and **a great flutter** within  
both secular and ecclesiastical circles.

The scandal eventually causes **self-examination**,  
**soul-searching** and **heart-searching** within the ranks  
of the church itself.

Eventually, every aspect of the case is **laid bare**.  
**20** The vicar is arrested and convicted of child abuse.

A **cleric** who **fails in** his **duty**, who is found guilty of  
**negligence of duty** or has otherwise **broken** his **vow**  
may be **excommunicated**.

An **excommunicated** ( person ) is **cut off from** communion,  
and membership of the church by ecclesiastical sentence.

As the church eventually finds the vicar guilty of  
**gross misconduct**, he is punished by **excommunication**.  
Eventually, justice has been done.

Just after the sexton had committed suicide,  
**30** a stranger had **inquired** at the vicarage.

He had **offered / tendered** his **services** as a sexton.

As the vicar had noticed the stranger being **humpbacked /**  
**hunchbacked**, he had felt a certain pity and had promised him  
to **let it come to a test / let him prove** his **skills**.

In spite of his disability, in spite of the fact that he is

a **humpback / hunchback**, the stranger seemed **confident**.

There was a **wariness** in his voice, and he seemed to be  
quite **self-confident**.

\* lægge ngt. på køl  
henlægge / sylte en sag  
\* bringe ngt. frem i lyset

\* lægge ngt. på hylden  
~ henlægge / sylte ( en sag )  
\* bringe ngt. frem i lyset

\* beundringsværdig \* berettiget \* selvsikkerhed

\* beundringsværdigt

\*

\* ~ udveksling af informationer

\* samfund \* ( arbejds-) \* bofællesskabs kollektiv  
kollektiv kommune i visse lande

\* de nøgne kendsgerninger  
\* den nøgne sandhed

\* forårsage / skabe ( stor ) ophidselse / opstandelse

\* røre \* ( flagren ), uro  
utilfredshed opstandelse, nervøsitet

\* selvransagelse

\* = \*

\*

\* blotlægge ngt.

\*

\* gejstlig \* begå fejl i tjenesten

\* embedsforsømmelse \* bryde sit løfte

\* ekskommunikeret, udstødt

\* udstødt \* afskære ng. fra ngt.

\*

\*

\* grov embedsmisbrug / tjenesteforseelse

\* retfærdigheden sker fyldest

\*

\* forespørge / henvende sig

\* tilbyde sin tjeneste

\* pukkelrygget

\* =

\* lade det komme an på en prøve \* lade ng. bevise deres færdigheder

\* pukkelrygget person

\* selvtilidsfuld

\* vagtsomhed

\* selvtilidsfuld

<b>748</b> Despite his disability, the newcomer had proved his skills	*
at the next morning ringing, and was employed as a <b>sexton</b> .	* kirkebetjent ( incl. klokker )
Except that he's <b>disfigured</b> by his <b>humpback</b> / <b>hunchback</b> ,	* skæmme ng. * pukkelryg
and walks with <b>slight limp</b> , he is a handsome man.	* halten / humpen
When the ladies on rare occasions catch his eyes, they feel	*
sexually attracted but when they see him <b>limping</b> ( around ),	* halte / humpe ( omkring )
their <b>attraction</b> turns into nothing but pity.	* tiltrækning
Until they <b>got accustomed to</b> his <b>peculiar appearance</b> ,	* blive vant til ngt. * særegen * fremtoning mærkværdig
many people just <b>pivoted</b> and walked away at the sight of him.	* vende om på stedet
<b>10</b> Some kids <b>mock</b> him by walking with a <b>pronounced limp</b> .	* gøre nar af ng. * udtalt, tydelig * halten, humpen
When it comes to his work, the sexton seems <b>undaunted</b> .	* uforfærdet / uforknyt
<b>Undaunted by</b> peoples first reactions,	* & ikke skræmt af ngt.
he <b>goes about</b> his <b>work / duties</b> ,	* passe sit arbejde / sine pligter
soon <b>to</b> everybody's <b>complete / entire satisfaction</b> .	* til ngs. fulde tilfredshed
Although the vicar at once <b>got on friendly terms with</b>	* komme på venskabelig fod med ng.
the sexton, the latter just <b>attends to</b> his <b>work / duties</b> .	* passe sit arbejde
Only now and then he <b>communicates with</b> the vicar.	* kommunikere med ng.
So although the vicar and the sexton <b>are on friendly terms</b> ,	* være på talefod
the sexton just <b>minds</b> his <b>own business</b> .	* passe sig selv
<b>20</b> <b>Ey(e)ing</b> everybody <b>warily</b> , he <b>is wary of</b> close contact.	* betragte ng. * vagtsomt * vagtsom overfor ngt.
He is <b>wary of</b> getting in close contact with people.	* på vagt overfor at -
As he has a <b>wary</b> expression on his face, and seems to	* vagtsom
avoid close contact, people say he has <b>bats in</b> his <b>belfry</b> .	* ~ have rotter på loftet ( * flagermus * klokketårn )
Apparantly embarrassed about his <b>stunted</b> figure,	* forkrøblet
the sexton <b>keeps a wary eye on</b> the surroundings	* holde vagtsomt øje med
before he <b>ventures out of doors</b> .	* vove sig udendørs / udenfor (døren)
He seems very <b>uncommunicative</b> .	* umeddelsom
Apparantly <b>marked by</b> his <b>stuntedness</b> ,	* mærket af ngt. * forkrøblethed
he isn't very <b>communicative</b> .	* meddelsom
<b>30</b> He seems to <b>keeps himself to himself</b> to avoid	* holde sig for sig selv
<b>being an object of pity</b> .	* være genstand for ngt. * medlidenhed medynk
So much the more, the vicar <b>takes / has pity on</b> him.	* få / have medlidenhed med ng.
Some people <b>go to confession to confess</b> .	* gå til skrifte * skrifte
Confession is the <b>admission</b> of sin(s) <b>made by a penitent</b>	* gøre indrømmelse * angrende person
<b>seeking forgiveness of</b> their sins.	* søge tilgivelse for ngt.
As a priest, a <b>confessor</b> is authorized to hear confessions.	* skriftefader skriftemålspræst
Any information <b>acquired</b> during the confession must be	* ( information ) fået
<b>treated in strict / the strictest confidence</b> .	* behandlet * ~ strengt / yderst fortroligt

**749** As a **penitent confessor** who **submits to penance**,  
a **penitent** must be sure that no **breach of confidence**  
takes place.

As a confessor, a priest **receives** a lot of **confidences**.

As he has promised never to **betray** a **confidence**,  
he must be careful never to reveal anything  
he was told **in confidence**.

People who want to confess enter a place set apart,  
usually an enclosed room called a **confessional**,  
**10** where they can make their confession in **seclusion**.

The confessional is separated by a wall,  
provided with **perforation(s)** through which the confessor  
can hear the penitent make their confession ( of sin ),  
but not see them clearly.

Penitents, who **confess to** the priest, **confess** their **sins**.

Having **confessed** his sins **to** the confessor, a penitent  
hopes to be forgiven and **be granted / given absolution**.

‘ God welcomes the sinner who **repents**, ‘ it is said.

As a religious practice it originated in Judaism  
**20** and was taken over by the early Christian Church  
in which public confession was **customary**.

The fourth Lateran Council (1215) made **auricular con>**  
**fession** ( confession to a priest who is **empowered to grant**  
**absolution** ) **incumbent (up)on** all Christians once a year.

At times in history it was **incumbent (up)on** people **to**  
attend service several days a week.

In the Roman Catholic and Orthodox Churches  
auricular confession is part of the **sacrament of penance**.

Many Protestant Churches use a form of general confession  
made by the whole congregation in public worship,  
although auricular confession is also practised in  
**30** some Anglican and Lutheran Churches.

A **mortal sin** is one of **the ( seven ) deadly sins**:  
**pride, covetousness, lust, anger, gluttony,**  
**envy, and sloth.**

\* angrende      \* bekender      \* underkaste sig bods-  
   skriftehandling      handling  
\* bodsudøver      \* brud på fortroligheden  
\*  
\* få >      \* betroelser  
\* afsløre ( forråde ) en betroelse  
\*  
\* i fortrolighed  
\*  
\* skriftestol  
\* afsondrethed  
\*  
\* gennemhulning(er)  
\*  
\*  
\* skrifte til ng.      \* tilstå ngt.  
\* bekende ngt. overfor ng.  
\* få absolution / syndsforladelse  
\* angre  
\*  
\*  
\* sædvanlig  
\* ( ørelig ) ~ mundtlig / hemmelig      \* skriftemål  
\* give ng. magt / bemyndige ng. til at      \* give >  
\* absolution      \* påhvilende ng.  
syndsforladelse  
\* ... ng. at -  
\*  
\*  
\* bodssacramente  
\*  
\*  
\*  
\*  
\* dødssynd  
\* hovmod      \* griskhed      \* begær      \* vrede      \* grådighed  
   liderlighed  
\* misundelse      \* dovenskab

**750** The relationship between a confessor and a penitent, must be based on **confidentiality**.

Any information received in the **confessional** must be regarded as **strictly confidential** and be **treated in the strictest confidence**.

As a confessor in the confessional and as a **confidant** **anywhere else**, the vicar is required to keep people's **confidences** completely **confidential**.

It's a **breach** of **confidentiality** for anyone to reveal what **10** someone has said **in confidence**.

The relation between people who **confide in** each other must be based on confidentiality.

One day a penitent **confesses to** a fear of **original sin**.  
ê`rid\$inêl

He **confesses to** having committed a number of **sins**.

He **confesses** (that) he is **sinful** as he has **sinned**.

He **confesses** (that) he has **sinned against** God,

as he has **given in to lust**, and **coveted** other men's wives.  
`kûvitid

**On his own confession**, he has lead a **sinful** life as he has been **covetous** of women, and has had **sinful** thoughts.  
`kûvitês

**20** The priest asks the penitent if he has ever **yielded to lust**, and has had sex with another man's wife.

As the answer is no, the priest grants absolution.

He grants absolution to the penitent.

He grants the penitent absolution.

The **next / following days** the vicar notices a different behaviour of the sexton.

The sexton addresses the vicar **in a confidential way**,  
kânfi`den\$êl  
and in a tone surprisingly **confiding**.  
kên`faiding

He seems to **have** very little **confidence in** himself.

**30** Never revealing any more than **the barest suspicion of / hint of** a smile, he seems to **be lacking in / lack`confidence**.

Although he is **confident of meeting sympathy from** the vicar, he doesn't **feel confident about** himself.

Although he is **confident of** the vicars **understanding of** his problems, he doesn't **feel confident about** his situation.

The sexton **blushes ( scarlet ) // goes red / scarlet ( with embarrassment ) ( at the situation )**.

\*

\* fortrolighed  
tillid  
\* skriftestol

\* strengt fortroligt

\* behandle ngt. i yderste fortrolighed

\* person, man betror sig til

\* hvor som helst > \* ellers  
~ et hvilket som helst andet sted  
\* fortrolighed \* fortrolig

\* brud på fortroligheden, ~ tillidsbrud

\* i fortrolighed

\* betro sig til ng.

\* fortrolighed  
tillid, -sfuldhed  
\* indrømme / tilstå ngt.

\* arvesynd

\* - - - at -

\* synd

\* =

\* synde

\* =

\* synde mod ng.

\* give efter for >

\* lystfølelser  
liderlighed

\* begære ng.

\* ifølge éns egen tilståelse

\* =

\* begærlig efter ng.

\* syndefuld  
syndig  
\* liderlighed

\* give efter for ngt.

\*

\*

\*

\*

\* næste / følgende dage

\*

\* på en fortrolig / hemmelighedsfuld måde

\* betroende

\* have ( meget lidt )

\* ~ selvtillid

\* den mindste

\* ~ antydning af >

\* ... af ( smil )

\* ~ mangle

\* ~ selvtillid

\* være overbevist om /  
sikker på at -

\* møde sympati fra ng.  
& finde forståelse hos ng.

\* føle sig / være sikker på ng.

\* være ...

\* forståelse for ngt.

\* & tryk ved ngt.

\* rødme / blive rød i hovedet

\* af forlegenhed

\* ved ngt.

**751** As the sexton's **voice drops / sinks to a confidential whisper**, the vicar suddenly seems to recognize his voice from the confessional **the other day**.

He begins to **feel confident** (that) it must have been the sexton confessing the other day.

'Please, be frank with me if you want to talk in private,' the vicar urges (the sexton) **confidentially**.

'I need to talk to you – **in confidence** of course,' the sexton admits **confidingly**.

**10** 'You **have** my **solemn promise**,' the vicar replies in a **confiding** tone of voice.

**Having confidence in** the vicar, and **having confidence in** his ability to help him out of awkward and painful situation, the sexton **is confident** (that) he will find understanding with the vicar.

He **has confidence** (that) he will be met with the vicar's forgiveness and get forgiveness for what wrong he has done.

The vicar takes the **guilt-ridden** sexton to his office and **pours** him a drink.

**20** He **pours** a drink **for** both of them.

**Taking** the vicar **into** his **confidence**, the sexton prepares the vicar for an embarrassing surprise.

The sexton leans forward **confidingly**.

**Confiding in** the vicar, he **confides to** him **that** he **has** a **secret** he can't **bear / endure** having.

He can't **bear / endure to** have it any more.

Taking off his shirt, the sexton unveils a false hunchback.

A **stuffed hump** sewn into the back of his **vest** E / A **undershirt** has **done duty as** a hunchback.

**30** Standing in front of the vicar, **stripped to the waist / bare from the waist and upwards**, the sexton displays a perfectly shaped **torso / upper part of the body**.

Looking at the **bare-chested** sexton, the vicar **gape / is dumbfounded** with surprise at the sexton suddenly **making** this **barefaced revelation**.

'Please, forgive me my deceit having **based my life on** such a **blatant / bare-faced / A bald-faced lie**, the sexton pleads, 'but let me tell you about **what went before** –

let me explain the **antecedent events**.'

\* stemme > \* falde til > \* fortrolig >

\* hvisken

\* forleden dag

\* føle sig sikker på at -

\*

\*

\* på en fortrolig / hemmelighedsfuld måde

\* i al fortrolighed

\* på en betroende måde

\* have ngs. ord ( højtidelig løfte ) på det

\* betroende

\* have tiltro til

\*

\* være overbevist om at -

\*

\* have tiltro til at -

\*

\* brødebetyngt  
skyldplaget

\* hælde ngt. op til ng.

\*

=

\* skænke ng. sin fortrolighed

\*

\* på betroende vis

\* betro sig til ng.

\* betro ng. at -

\* bære / udholde at -

\*

=

\*

\* udstoppet

\* pukkel

\* undertrøje

\*

=

\* gøre det ud for /  
tjene som ngt.

\* afklædt til taljen  
~ med bar overkrop

\* bar / nøgen fra taljen og opefter

\* overkrop

\* barbrystet

\* måbe / blive målløs / tabe både næse og mund

\* komme med >

\* åben  
utilsløret

\* afsløring

\* basere sit liv >  
( & leve på

\* fræk, skamløs  
ufordkammeret

\* løgn

\* hvad, der er gået forud

\* forudgående

( ~ forhistorien )

\* begivenhed

<b>752</b> ‘ Already as a teenager I started to work as a <b>bell-ringer</b> in a parish far from here,’ he begins.	* ( frivillig ) ringer, klokker	
‘ I was well-liked by everybody but one day i realized that the girls <b>took</b> a special <b>interest in</b> me.	*	
I was, of course, flattered but also shy about it.	* ~ fatte >	* interesse for ng.
Then, to my surprise, I realized that I was also <b>desired</b> by married women even some <b>of mature years</b> .	*	
Without meaning to, apparently I had an irresistable sexual <b>attraction for</b> both young and <b>mature</b> women.	* begære ng.	
<b>10</b> Although I know it says, ‘ Though shalt not <b>covet</b> thy neighbour’s wife, ‘ I must admit I couldn’t help feeling very attracted, but even if some of them tried to <b>lead me astray</b> ,	* i en moden alder	
I, nevertheless, never let myself <b>go astray / wrong</b> .	* formidle ngt. >	
In fact even the rector’s wife <b>turned</b> her <b>attentions to</b> me, and kept <b>pursuing</b> me <b>with</b> her <b>indecent attentions</b> (pl.).	* tiltrækning for / af ng.	* moden
Like you <b>couldn’t call</b> the rector a beauty <b>at `any rate</b> ,	* attrå / begære ng.	
his wife <b>was anything but</b> a beauty.	*	
Having a <b>hideous</b> face, she was ( <b>as</b> ) <b>ugly as sin</b> , so I had no difficulty in <b>rejecting</b> her <b>advances</b> ,’ the sexton admits.	* lede ng. på afveje	
<b>20</b> <b>Opening his heart to</b> the vicar, the sexton then goes on <b>pouring</b> ( ) `out his trouble.	* komme på ...	
‘ <b>Pouring `out his heart / soul</b> ( <b>to</b> the vicar ),’ he goes on, ‘ <b>Furious at / about</b> being rejected, the rector’s wife had spread the rumour that I had had relationships with married women.	* rette sine ( romantiske ) tilnærmelser mod ng.	
Soon I was openly accused of being covetous of married women, and of having had <b>adulterous relationships</b> .	* forfølge / efterstræbe ng. med ng.	* utilbørlig ...
Falsly accused of adultery, I was fired as a sexton, and chased out of the parish ( <b>as</b> ) <b>miserable as `sin</b>	* ikke kalde ng. ng. i nogen som helst grad	
<b>30</b> as I had thought that I had <b>deserved</b> a better <b>fate</b> .	* være alt andet end ngt.	
<b>Out of my mind with despair</b> and rage, I had to find a new place to live, and a new way of life,	* ~ det ville være synd at sige	
and then <b>chance</b> brought me here at the right moment.	* hæsligt	* grim som arvesynden
It’s said that <b>no man can escape</b> his <b>destiny</b> .	* afvise ngs. ( seksuelle ) tilnærmelser	
Anyway, I decided to disguise myself as a hunchback in order to attract pity and get the job and, at the same time, to keep women at a distance to avoid trouble.	* åbne sit hjerte overfor ng.	
The hump certainly <b>created</b> a <b>diversion</b> .	* udøse ng.	
	* ... sit hjerte ( for ng. )	
	* rasende over ng.	
	*	
	*	
	*	
	* voksent >	* forhold
	* ~ seksuelt ...	
	*	
	* overmåde elendig / ulykkelig	
	* fortjene en ... skæbne ( ~ fortidig )	
	* ~ ude af sig selv af >	* desperation fortvivlelse
	*	
	* skæbne ( tilfældet )	
	* intet menneske kan flygte fra sin skæbne ( fremtidig )	
	*	
	*	
	*	
	* skabe >	* afledning

**753** In order to **clear** my **conscience**, I must **bare** my **soul**.

I have to **bare** my **sole** to you and admit that I have been **seeking revenge** for the bad **way** in which the rector and his wife had **treated** me / **behaved towards** me.

I **had it in mind** to **get / have / take** ( my ) **revenge** (on the rector and his wife) by stealing some church silver, as proper **revenge** / **payback** for their **mistreatment**.

Out of my mind with **vengefulness**, I **had it in mind that** I would steal your church silver and, appearing as a differently **10** looking person somewhere else, I would not be reckognized as the **wanted** thief.

**Getting to know** you and having listened to your services, I realized, however, that I would **make** the **innocent suffer** for the **guilty** and that **two wrongs don't make a right**.

I **place** my **life / fate** in your **hands** as your forgiveness is my only hope,' the sexton **penitently** concludes feeling **naked** and **emotionally drained** after his **ordeal** of **laying bare** his **barefaced lie** and painful past.

Impressed by the sexton's **heart-to-heart** confession **20** his **barefacedness**, frankness, openness, and penitence, the vicar feels **called upon** to **ease** the sexton's **conscience** and forgive him his fraud.

The vicar **takes** (his) **time** to **think** ( **carefully** ).

After a while the vicar breaks the silence by declaring, ' As it seems you are **more sinned against than sinning**, and as I believe that the **antecedents** **redeem** the fraud, - - - I want you to stay and I want everything out in the open – is that okay / OK with you ? '

The sexton's face lights up as he nods his head.

**30** Even if he promises to **do / perform penance**, the sexton is still worried about how to get out of his miserable situation.

The vicar tells him to **be** ( **in** ) **hiding** until next Sunday, and then ring the bells as usual.

Having **put / placed** (all his) **confidence** in the vicar and his abilities, the sexton **has blind / implicit confidence** in the vicar and his abilities. - - -

**Having faith** in him, he **has trust** in him.

\* rense sin samvittighed

\* blotlægge sin sjæl

\* blotte min sjæl for ng.

\* søge hævn for ngt.

\* måde hvorpå ng. >

\* behandle ng. / opføre sig på overfor ng.

\* have i sinde at -

\* få / tage hævn >

\* ( over ng. )

\* hævn for ngt.

\* mishandling

\* hævntørst / -gerrighed

\* have i sinde at -

\*

\*

\* eftersøgt

\* lære ng. at kende

\* lade den uskyldige lide >

\* for de skyldige ~ for smed at rette bager

\* lægge sin skæbne i ngs. hænder

\* angerfuldt

\* nogen \* følelses- \* udmattet \* prøvelse med at -  
mæssig

\* blotlægge ngt.

\* skamløs

\* løgn

\* åbenhjertlig

\* ligefremhed

\* kaldet til at -

\* lette ngs. samvittighed

\*

\* tage sig tid til at -

\* tænke sig om

\*

\*

\* forhistorien

\* råde bod på

\* forudgående begivenheder

\* den nøgne sandhed

\*

\*

\* gøre bod

\*

\* ~ holde sig skjult

\*

\* sætte ... sin lid til ng&t.

\* have blind tillid til ng&t.

\*

\* have tillid / tiltro til ng.

\* ... tro på ng.

**754** On Sunday, at the sermon, the vicar **tells** a **`parable** comparable to the sexton's story.

Having finished his sermon, he descends from the pulpit and fetches the sexton hiding in a **communicating** room, and prepared to **give** the congregation **the bare facts**.

In front of the congregation the vicar invites the sexton, as prearranged, to reveal **the bare `bones** ( **of** his story ).

When he tells about his **antecedents**, the congregation listens with curiosity to his **antecedent** experiences.

**10** He only gives **the barest details** but when he takes off his shirt and unveils his false humpback there's a **stir**.

The relation between the parable and **the bare facts of** the sexton's case **is** suddenly **clear to** the congregation.

Thanks to the vicar's parable and the sexton's confession the congregation seems ready to forgive the sexton.

The sexton is **quietly** (E) **confident that** he **pulled through**.

In order to **get things clear**, the vicar asks the congregation to raise their hands if they want the sexton to stay.

Remembering the words of **the Redeemer**, the words of **20 the redemption of the world from** sin, a vast majority believe the sexton is not **beyond / past redemption**.

They believe Jesus will be ready to **redeem** him **from** sin.

A **forest of** hands indicates a **vote of confidence** ( **in** the sexton ).

Having thanked the congregation for their confidence in him, and promised to **redeem himself**, the sexton climbs the stairs of the belfry in a **confident** manner, and rings the bells with a **confident** smile.

The vicar's introduction to priesthood has really been **30 a baptism of / by `fire**.

As the sexton is **in** the vicar's **confidence** and visa versa, they often **have a heart-to-`heart** ( **talk** ) with each other, and as each other's **confidants**, they **confide in** each other.

The sexton feels / is **confident about / as to** the future.

**Redeeming** every **pledge / promise**, the vicar, the clerk and the sexton never **give it a lick and a promise**, so they keep **enjoying** the **confidence of** the congregation.

\* lignelse

\*

\*

\* tilstødende

\* de nøgne kendsgerninger

\*

\* de nøgne kendsgerninger ( fra ngt.)

\* fortid, tidligere liv  
forfædre

\* forudgående, tidligere

\* de mest nødvendige >

\* detaljer

\* røre, postyr  
opstandelse

\* de nøgne kendsgerninger vedrørende ngt.

\* stå klar for ng.

\*

\*

\* i sit stille sind

\* sikker på at

\* klare skærerne

\* få klare linier

\*

\* Forsoneren

\* forsoning

\* være hinsides frelse / redning / nåde  
redningsløst / nådesløst fortabt  
frelse / tilgive ng. fra ngt.

\* skov af ngt.

\* tillidsvotum

\* til ng.

\*

\* gøre sig bedre fortjent

\* selvtillidsfuld / -sikker

\*

...

\*

\* ild dåb

\* have ngs. fortrolighed

\* ... åbenhjertig samtale

\* fortrolig ( person )

\* betro sig til ng.

\* fortrosthedsfuld

\* omkring / hvad angår

\* opfylde et løfte

\* gå let hen over et arbejde

\* nyde godt af ngs. tillid

<b>755</b> `Baptism is a Christian <b>baptismal ceremony</b> in which - `tiz	* dåb	* dåbsceremony
a priest <b>give</b> a person <b>baptism</b> .	* give ng. dåb	
At the baptism a few drops of water from the <b>baptismal font</b>	* døbe font	
are <b>poured on</b> a person or they are covered with water	* hælde ng. på ng.	
as an <b>initiation rite</b> / a <b>rite of initiation</b> into Christianity i`ni\$ietèri rait	* indførende / indledende	* rite / ritual ( = indvielsesritual )
or sacrament of the Christian church.	*	
In many cultures, they have <b>initiation rites / rituals</b>	* indvielses rite / ritual	
and <b>initiation ceremonies</b> for boys and girls before puberty.	* ... ceremoni	
When <b>baptized</b> , a person is <b>baptized</b> a Christian, bap`taizd E/A `bap -	* døbe ng.	* ... ng. ngt.
<b>10</b> and perhaps <b>baptized</b> a Christian name.	* =	
A <b>christening</b> is a ceremony of baptism esp. as	* ( kristen ) dåb	
accompanied by the giving of a name to the infant baptized.	*	
When a child is <b>christened</b> , it is <b>christened</b> a name.	* døbe ng.	* døbe ng. ngt
At the christening, an <b>uncomfortable</b> child <b>communicates</b>	* utilpas	* meddele / give udtryk for ng.
its anxiety by crying.	*	
The church <b>holds confirmation</b> , a <b>confession of faith</b> ,	* holde konfirmation	* trosbekendelse
a <b>rite administered</b> to <b>baptized</b> persons in some churches,	* rite	* formidle ng. til ng.
a sacrament for <b>confirming</b> and <b>strengthening the recipient</b>	* ritual	* døbt
<b>in</b> the Christian faith, in others as a rite without sacramental	* bekræfte ng. >	* styrke ng. >
character by which the recipient is admitted to	* i ng.	* modtager
<b>20</b> full <b>communion with</b> the church.	*	
As the <b>candidates for confirmation</b> need	* fællesskab / samkvem med ng.	
<b>preparation / instruction</b> for <b>confirmation</b> , they have to	* konfirmationskandidat	
<b>go to confirmation classes</b> to <b>be prepared</b> for <b>confirmation</b> .	* konfirmationsforberedelse	* gå >
Telling the candidates about the <b>ministry</b> of Jesus,	* til konfirmationsforberedelse	* forberedt til ...
the vicar teach them the <b>essentials</b> of the Christian faith.	* præstegerning	
The vicar's enthusiasm <b>communicates itself to</b> most of	* essensen af / ~ grundelementerne i ng.	
the candidates.	* smitte af på ng.	
So he <b>infects</b> most of the candidates <b>with</b> his enthusiasm.	*	
Even if the Gospel is considered a <b>communicable</b> message,	* smitte ng. med ng.	
<b>30</b> even the <b>communicable</b> vicar must, however, <b>struggle to</b>	* som let kan udbredes	
<b>communicate</b> the Gospel <b>to</b> some of the candidates.	* meddelsom	* stride / kæmpe for at -
Some candidates and parents are quite <b>reserved</b> .	* overlevere / viderebringe ng. til ng.	
The vicar <b>dangles a bunch</b> of keys <b>in frustration</b> ,	* reserveret	
as he <b>racks</b> his <b>brain(s)</b> , remembering the parent's names.	* umeddelsom	
Besides <b>strengthening</b> the candidates' Christian <b>faith</b> ,	* ~ dingle med >	* bundt ( nøgler )
and <b>fortifying</b> them <b>in</b> the faith, the vicar's goal is to	* ~ bryde sin hjerne / sit hoved	* frustration ærgrelse
prepare them to <b>go out into</b> the <b>world with confidence</b> .	* styrke >	* ngs. ( kristne ) tro
	* ... ng. >	* i troen
	* gå ud >	* i verden
		* med ( selv-) tillid

756 Besides **preaching** the **word of God**, the vicar

**preaches** the benefits of democracy **to** the candidates.

**Preaching** the **virtues of** a decent lifestyle, he **underlines** the **fragility** of the body and the **immortality** of the soul.

One day, **preaching** a **sermon against excess**,  
ik`sesiz / `eksesiz  
he **preaches about** the **evils** of all kinds of **excesses**.

He **underlines / stresses that** excellent manners are not enough to **redeem** an **excessive lifestyle**.

Teaching **religious knowledge** and **lecturing on** ethics

10 and Protestant **ethic** can be **wearing / wearying**.  
`weëring    `wiëri ing  
It can be a **wearing / wearying** task.

The vicar must admit that some people and some tasks

**weary** him.  
wiëri

Having to **take religious instruction** (U),

and be **given lectures about / on** morals

can be none the less a **weary / wearisome** task.  
`wieri    `wiërisém

If the vicar **lectures** the candidates **about / on** excesses in a way that they find annoying or boring, they **weary**.

As the lesson **wears on**, some candidate **weary of**  
weëz    `wiëri  
20 ( listening to ) the vicar's parade of lectures.

**Growing weary of** ( listening to ) his **wearisome** lectures, the candidates may react with **weary** sighs

When they **are weary of** ( listening to ) him lecturing

they may **chorus**, ' Now, you're **preaching**.'

If his eagerness has **run away with** him, the vicar replies,

' Sorry, I didn't mean to **preach**.'

The vicar holds a confirmation service.

Some candidates **are** mainly **confirmed** because of their parents and family.

30 To these candidates the only **redeeming feature** of the confirmation is the party and the gifts.

Some of their **ancestors** C / pl. **antecedents** /  
- -  
**for(e)bears** may **turn** (over) in their **grave** at such **profanity**.

A **profane** attitude to life is demonstrated by a behaviour that shows lack of respect for God or holy things.

In some families the children **are under no obligation**.

They **are under no obligation to** be confirmed.

At his **confirmation party**, a **newly confirmed person** may **christen** some of his gifts.

\* prædike / forkynde >

\* guds ord

\* ... ngt. til ng.

\* prise / rose >    \* prisværdigheder /    \* understrege /  
dyder ved ngt.    fremhæve >

\* skrøbelighed    \* udskejelighed

\* fremføre en ( moral-) prædiken mod ngt. \* udskejelighed

\* moralprædike om ngt.    \* =

\* understrege / fremhæve at -

\* råde bod på / opveje    \* overdreven    \* livsstil, levevis  
udskejelighed

\* & kristendomskundskab    \* foredrag /  
holde foredrag om ngt.

\* etik    \* opslidende, slidsomt    \* =  
udmattende, trættende

\* =

\*

\* trætte ng.

\* få religionsundervisning

\* få foredrag om ngt.

\* slidsom, opslidende    \* & kedelig  
udmattende, trættende

\* formane ng. angående ngt.

\* trættes, kede sig

\* slæbe sig hen    \* trættes / kedes ved  
( at gøre ) ngt.

\*

\* blive træt af / uinteresseret i ngt.    \* kedelig

\* træt  
kedsom

\* være træt af / uinteresseret i ngt.

\* sige i kor    \* moralprædike  
præke

\* løbe af med ng.

\* præke

\*

\* blive konfirmeret

\*

\* forsonende træk

\*

\* forfædre

\* vende sig i sin grav    \* blasfemi  
bespottelse

\* profan, blasfemisk  
bespottelig

\*

\* ikke være underlagt nogen forpligtelse

\* ... til at -

\* konfirmationsfest    \* konfirmand

\* indvie ngt.

<b>757</b> When someone has died, the vicar <b>conducts / holds</b>	* holde >
a <b>funeral service</b> before the departed is buried,	* begravelsesgudstjeneste
or brought away to be <b>cremated</b> .	* kremere ng.
<b>Undertaking</b> (U) is <b>undertaken</b> by an <b>undertaker</b> /	* bedemandsarbejde * varetages af > * bedemand
a <b>funeral director</b> / A& mortician.	* =
The sexton and the <b>gravedigger</b> look after the churchyard.	* graver
In case of a <b>burial</b> , long hours of <b>digging</b> and filling	* begravelse
of the graves <b>wear</b> the <b>diggers out</b> , and as the work <b>drains</b>	* ( slide ) > * graver ( op ) * ( dræne ) ~ udmatte ... ~ udmatte >
and <b>wearies</b> them, the <b>drained</b> and <b>weary</b> diggers	* ~ udmatte ng. * udmattet * =
<b>10</b> once in a while take / have a rest from the hard work.	*
So when they <b>weary</b> , they have a stop for a well-earned rest.	* blive udmattet / træt
They are <b>worn ( out )</b> as they <b>wearily</b> climb up the ladder.	* udmattet * træt
The gravedigger's <b>weariness</b> now and then <b>amazes</b> him.	* - hed * forbløffe ng.
' Digging a grave is a <b>wearying</b> task,' he admits wearily.	* opslidende, udmattende trættende
' Digging is a <b>wearing, weary</b> and <b>wearisome</b> task,'	* opslidende, slidsomt * & kedeligt * & kedeligt
he admits, looking old and <b>weary</b> .	* udmattende, trættende * træt
' I don't <b>wonder</b> (that) you are tired - you'll <b>wear</b> yourself <b>out</b>	* ( ikke ) undre sig over at - * slide sig selv op
if you carry on working so hard,' the sexton warns.	*
The inscription on some old gravestones has <b>worn away</b> .	* forvitte
<b>20</b> The <b>ravages</b> of time have <b>worn away</b> the inscription.	* tidens tand * forvitte ng.
<b>Wind</b> and <b>weather</b> may <b>wear</b> inscription <b>away</b> .	* vind og vejr
In his <b>funeral sermon</b> the vicar mentions that,	* begravelsesprædiken
to everybody's <b>deep sorrow / great grief</b> ,	* til ngs. dybe sorg
illness and death had come suddenly.	*
<b>Over the years</b> she had simply <b>worn</b> herself <b>out</b> .	* ~ i årenes løb * slide sig op
Many <b>attend</b> her <b>funeral</b> to <b>pay</b> their <b>last respect</b> .	* deltage i ngs. begravelse * vise den sidste respekt
Many <b>come to / are at</b> her <b>funeral</b> to <b>pay</b> their <b>respect</b>	* komme til ... * vise sin ...
( <b>to</b> the departed and her family ).	* overfor ng.
People who <b>go to / attend</b> a <b>funeral</b> usually <b>wear black</b> .	* gå til / overvære ... * bære / være klædt i sort
<b>30</b> At the <b>burial ( service / ceremony )</b> the vicar <b>recites</b> ,	* begravelse ( -s- ritual / ceremoni ) * opremse
' <b>earth to earth, ashes to ashes, dust to dust</b> ,'	* ~ af jord er du kommet, til jord skal du blive, af jord skal du atter opstå
as he <b>sprinkles</b> three small <b>shovelfuls / scoopfuls</b> of earth	* drysse / strø ng. >
<b>on</b> the coffin / eA casket.	* på ng.
Everybody <b>grieves / mourns</b> her death.	* sørge over / begræde ng.
<b>Mourning</b> for her / <b>grieving for / over</b> her, some <b>mourners</b>	* sørge over ng. * sorgende ( begravelse deltager )
<b>wear</b> a black <b>armband</b> as a sign of <b>grief / mourning</b> .	* bære / gå med * armbind * sorg ( sørge- ) ...
After a funeral he feels an urge to <b>commune with nature</b> .	* være i pagt med naturen
So he spends time <b>outside / outdoors</b> in a <b>natural place</b> ,	* udenfor * naturområde
to enjoy it in a quiet and peaceful way and rest his <b>weary</b> brain.	* udendørs * træt udmattet

## THE HONEYMOONERS

758 At a <b>church wedding</b> , the vicar holds a <b>wedding service</b> .	* kirkelig ~ kirkebryllup	* vielse	* bryllups-	* ~ gudstjeneste
At a <b>white wedding</b> , the bride <b>wears white</b> as of sign of	* hvidt	* bryllup		* bære > hvidt
<b>purity</b> .		* renhed		
Before her wedding, the <b>mind</b> of the bride-to-be is <b>occupied</b>	* sind			* optaget af at -
( <b>in / with</b> ) getting exactly the <b>bridal wear</b> she wishes to <b>wear</b> .	* brudebeklædning / -tøj			* have på
<b>Wearing a wedding dress / gown</b> and a <b>bridal veil</b> ,	* være iklædt	* lang el. kort brudekjole		* brudeslør
and <b>carrying a bridal / wedding bouquet</b> in her right hand	* bære ( på ) >	/ lang ...		* brudebuket
the bride is <b>walked / led up</b> the <b>aisle</b> by her father.	* fulgt / ledt op ad >		* midtergang ~ kirkegulvet	
She <b>has / wears</b> her <b>hair</b> ( <b>taken up</b> ) & / ( <b>in a bun</b> ).	* have / ~ have >	* hår	* sat op	* i en knude
10 <b>Wearing earrings</b> ( in <b>holes pierced in</b> her <b>ear lobes</b> ),	* bære >	* øreringe	* hul >	* prikket i > * øreflip
she <b>has</b> ( <b>got</b> ) ( ) <b>on</b> some very unusual earrings.		* have ngt. på		
The groom <b>wears</b> a black <b>suit</b> and a <b>tie to</b> his wedding.	* være klædt i ngt. til ngt.		* jakkesæt	* slips
( At his work they haven't got a <b>dress code</b> so he doesn't		* ~ påklædningsregelsæt		
have to <b>wear</b> a suit <b>for work</b> ).		* have ngt. på arbejde		
Some of the female wedding guests <b>wear</b> a <b>demure dress</b>	* bære / være klædt i >		* tækkelig	* kjole
while the most <b>daring</b> ladies <b>wear</b> a <b>revealing dress</b> ,	* dristig ( dame )	* - - - >	* afslørende	* =
short and <b>provocative</b> without <b>shoulders</b> .	* provokerende, udfordrende			* skuldre
Inside the church, they <b>wear</b> a <b>shawl</b> to cover	* bære >			* ( et ) sjal
their <b>bare / naked</b> shoulders.		* bare / nøgne		
20 Other times they just <b>carry</b> it <b>over</b> their <b>arm</b> .		* bære ngt. over armen		
Those who <b>wear</b> their <b>hair long</b> may <b>have</b> their <b>hair loose</b>	* have håret hængende ned		* ... løst / udslået hår	
or they may <b>wear</b> their <b>hair in</b> a <b>ponytail</b> , in a <b>plait</b> E/A <b>braid</b> ,	* ~ have håret i >	* ~ hestehale		* fletning ( i nakken )
<b>in bunches</b> , or in <b>pigtails</b> E/A <b>braids</b> tied with <b>ribbons</b> .	* i ~ rottehaler	* i ~ fletninger i siden		* ( pynte ) bånd
Some of the ladies display they personality for example				
by <b>wearing conspicuous hats</b> with big <b>brims</b> ,	* bære, gå med	* iøjenfaldende	* hat	* skygge
a lot of <b>jewellery</b> (U), exclusive <b>glasses</b> , <b>high heels</b> etc.	* have ngt. på			
while the men may <b>wear</b> a <b>moustache</b> (E) or a ( <b>full</b> ) <b>beard</b> .	* smykker	* briller		* ( sko med ) høje hæle
If they <b>wear</b> a <b>three-piece pinstripe(d)</b> or <b>herringbone</b> suit,	* have overskæg			* ( fuld- ) skæg
they <b>wear</b> trousers E/A pants, a jacket,	A <b>mustache</b> [ `mûsta\$ / mê`sta\$ ]			
30 and a <b>waistcoat</b> E/A <b>vest</b> in <b>pinstripe</b> or <b>herringbone</b> (U).	* være klædt i	* i tre dele	* nålestribet	* sildebens-
<b>Morning dress</b> (U) is <b>worn</b> at daytime ceremonies.				mønstreet
So a man <b>wears</b> a black <b>morning coat</b> E/A <b>cut away</b> ,	* vest		* nålestribe	* sildeben ( -mønster )
dark ( <b>striped</b> ) trousers E/A pants and a ( <b>silk</b> ) <b>top hat</b> .	* jaket ( -beklædning )			* bæres / bruges
Men may <b>wear</b> a special <b>tie</b> or <b>bow tie</b> ,	* bære / være klædt i ngt.			* jaket ( -jakke )
<b>wear a flower in</b> ( the <b>buttonhole</b> of ) the <b>lapel</b> ,	* sribede ( bukser )			* høj hat ( af silke )
<b>wear a silk / silken handkerchief</b> in the <b>breast pocket</b>	* have ngt. på		* slips	* butterfly
<b>wear a badge</b> E/A <b>button</b> , <b>wear</b> expensive <b>cufflinks</b> ,	* bære en blomst i knappehullet			* revers
<b>wear</b> an expensive <b>watch</b> etc.	* ~ have >	* silke	* lomme-tørklæde	* i brystlomme
	* bære ngt.		* emblem	* manchetsknap
	* bære ... ur			

<b>759</b> At their wedding, the bride and ( bride ) groom	*	
<b>make / take</b> their ( marriage / wedding ) <b>vows</b> .	* aflægge >	* bryllupsløfte
The bride and groom <b>put</b> a <b>wedding ring / band on</b>	* sætte >	* giftering på ( finger )
each other's ring finger.	*	
<b>Wearing</b> their <b>wedding rings</b> , they go / walk down the aisle.	* med ( deres ) gifteringe på	
After the marriage, when the newly married couple have	*	
<b>gone / walked down</b> the <b>aisle</b> , crowds of curious people	* ~ blive gift	
<b>congregate</b> in front of the church to <b>stare at</b> the newly-weds.	* samles	* stirre på / beglo ng.
The crowd <b>swells</b> to more than hundred onlookers	* vokse / svulme	
<b>10</b> as curious people <b>swell</b> the crowd.	* få ngt. til at ...	
<b>Shouldering past</b> other bystanders,	* ~ mase sig forbi ng.	
<b>shouldering</b> other onlookers <b>aside</b> ,	* ... ng. til side	
a <b>ruthless popular / tabloid press reporter</b>	* hensynsløs	
<b>shoulders</b> his <b>way through</b> the crowd to be <b>in</b> the <b>first row</b> .	*	
While the guests <b>pay</b> the couple extravagant <b>compliments</b> ,	*	
a <b>vicious lapdog communicates</b> it's viciousness <b>by growling</b>	* arrig	* vise ngt. ved at > * gø
and <b>baring</b> it's <b>teeth in</b> a <b>snarl</b> before it's <b>put in</b> it's <b>`place</b> .	* blotte tænderne	* i en knurren * sat på plads
An onlooker <b>communicates</b> his fear of dogs <b>by</b> uttering	* udtrykke ngt. ved at -	
a <b>stream</b> of <b>profanities</b> (pl.).	* strøm af eder	
<b>20</b> As it starts to rain, the crow of onlookers <b>thins out</b> ,	* ~ tynder det ud i ( flokken )	
and only a few <b>firm / staunch / steadfast</b> onlookers are left.	* ~ standhaftig	
The guests <b>talk</b> of <b>this</b> and <b>that / this, that</b> and <b>the `other</b> .	* snakke om dette og hint / løst og fast	
Having <b>discussed</b> moving to the countryside,	* diskutere om at -	
the newly-wed have <b>discussed where</b> to move to,	* diskutere hvxx	
<b>discussed when</b> they might move, and <b>what</b> it would be like.	* =	
Some of their friends <b>discuss</b> them <b>living</b> in the countryside.	* diskutere ng. vedrørende som at -	
<b>Discussing which</b> one of the <b>marriage partners</b>	* =	* ægteskabs - * partner pl : ~ ægteparret
will be <b>wearing</b> the <b>trousers</b> E/A <b>pants</b> while the other one	* have bukserne på	
will be <b>relegated</b> to the <b>role of</b> their <b>lapdog /E&amp; poodle</b> ,	* henføre / * rollen som > * skødehund reducere ng. til > ( puddehund )	
<b>30</b> their friends <b>have / make</b> E/A <b>take guesses</b> about	* ~ komme med at gæt om >	
the <b>gender roles</b> of the <b>spouses</b> in the future.	* ~ kønsroller	* ægtefolkene
<b>Thinking it's</b> the husband who will be in control,	* & gætte på / foreslå ng.	
one of the guest <b>has / makes</b> E/A <b>takes a guess</b> at him.	* ~ komme med at gæt på ng&t.	
' Will she <b>wear</b> / accept / allow that ( role ) ? '	* have ngt. på sig / godtage / tillade ngt.	
' No, she won't <b>wear</b> that, ' another guest ensures,' knowing	* =	
that she has never <b>played second fiddle</b> ( to anybody ).	* spille anden violin ( i forhold til ng.)	
Hopefully, the couple won't have a <b>rocky</b> marriage.	* brydsomt, problemfyldt ( ægteskab )	

<b>760</b> At their wedding night, the bride <b>bare</b> all for her husband.	* blotte alt, ~ tage alt tøjet af		
She's wearing <b>delicate underclothes</b> (pl).	* sart, lækkert		* undertøj
She is <b>wearing lace silk underclothing / underwear</b> (U).	* have ngt. på	* knipling	* undertøj
An <b>undergarment</b> is o-f or formal for a piece of underwear.	* underbeklædning		
A <b>shift</b> is a woman's simple straight dress	* særk		
or a simple straight piece of clothing worn by women	*		
in the past as an undergarment.	*		
She <b>wearing</b> a lacy <b>bra</b> and lacy <b>knickers</b> E/eA <b>panties</b>	* have ngt. på gå med	* brystholder	* trusser
together with a <b>suspender</b> E/A <b>garter belt</b> with fastenings	* hofteholder		
<b>10</b> for holding up her <b>silk stockings</b> .	* silkestrømper		
At other times she <b>wears</b> a <b>vest</b> (E) or a <b>T-shirt</b>	* undertrøje u. ærmer		* T-shirt
and sometimes a ( <b>half-</b> ) <b>slip</b> , a <b>chemise</b> or a <b>camisole</b> .	* underkjole ( -skørt )	* chemise	* underliv
	* undertrøje		
An <b>undershirt</b> (A) as worn in A is with or without arms.			
The husband <b>wears undershorts / ( under&gt; ) pants</b> (E)	* have ngt. på	* underbukser	
or <b>boxer shorts</b> and maybe a <b>vest</b> (E) or a <b>tee shirt</b> .	* boksershorts	* undertrøje	* T-shirt
If a woman wears <b>briefs</b> , she wears legless knickers,	* trusser		
and if a man wears <b>briefs</b> he wears legless underpants.	* =		
In E both knickers and underpants are called pants.	*		
In A both men and women may wear <b>underpants</b> .	* underbukser		
<b>20</b> Male & female: A <b>pair of briefs</b> ( E&A )	* trusser		
Female: A <b>pair of knickers</b> E/E <b>pants /eA panties</b>	* underbukser		
/A <b>underpants</b> .	* =		
Male: pair of ( <b>under&gt;</b> ) <b>pants</b> E/ EA <b>undershorts</b> /	* underbukser		
EA <b>boxer shorts</b> /A <b>underpants</b>	* boksershorts		* underbukser
A pair of <b>long johns</b> is a pair of (under>) pants	* lange underbukser		
with long legs.	*		
<b>Spouses</b> should <b>wear</b> their <b>heart on</b> their <b>sleeve</b> ,	* ægtefælle	* bære sine følelser udenpå tøjet / til skue	
and, expected to <b>show</b> (each other) <b>confidence</b> ,	* vise ( ng. ) fortrolighed / tillid		
they should never <b>abuse</b> each other's <b>confidence</b> .	* misbruge ngs. ...		
<b>30</b> They should remember to communicate with each other,	*		
and regularly <b>pay</b> their partner <b>a compliment</b> as couples	* give ng. et compliment		
often make themselves miserable by not <b>communicating</b> .	* tale sammen		
<b>Sweeping / brushing</b> a problem <b>under the carpet</b>	* feje ngt. ind under gulvtæppet		
never solves the problem.	*		
Partners ought to <b>heed</b> each other's advice and warnings.	* ~ være særlig opmærksom på ngt.		
They should <b>give / pay heed</b> ; <b>give / pay heed to</b> each other,	* ~ ofre opmærksomhed udvise årvågenhed		* ... på ng. ... overfor ng.
and <b>give / pay heed to</b> each other's advice and warnings.	* ... ngt.		
They should <b>take heed</b> ; <b>take heed of</b> people with ulterior	* tage sig i agt		* ... for
motives and their intentions to make either of them unfaithful.	*		

<b>761</b> Thanks to modern <b>communications</b> , honeymooners can go to <b>distant</b> / <b>faraway</b> places <b>for</b> / <b>on</b> their <b>honeymoon</b> .	* samfærdselsmidler * på ... bryllupsrejse
Some people have a <b>distant look</b> in their <b>eyes</b> when they think of a holiday far away.	*
As they have a <b>faraway expression</b> on their faces their <b>eyes</b> have a <b>distant faraway look</b> , like a sailor <b>staring out to sea</b> .	* et fjernt > * udtryk * ngs. øjne får / har et > * fjent * fraværende * udtryk * stirre ud mod havet
Big cities today <b>have</b> good <b>communications with</b> the rest of the world.	* have trafikforbindelser med ngt. *
<b>10</b> Electronic <b>means</b> of <b>communication</b> like telegraph, telephone and radio enable a sender and a <b>recipient</b> to <b>communicate</b> over huge distances in no time.	* kommunikationsmidler * modtager * kommunikere meddele sig * nedbrud i kommunikation
There may be a <b>breakdown</b> in <b>communication</b> .	* charterrejse * charterferie
Buying a <b>package tour</b> / <b>trip</b> , the honeymooners are going on a <b>package</b> / <b>charter holiday</b> .	*
John and Liz, as the couple are called, have decided on a tour to <b>the Archipelago</b> in <b>the Aegean Sea</b> . `a~kipelêgêu i`dʒi~ên	* ( det græske ) øhav * Det Ægæiske Hav *
Package tours are still something of a <b>novelty</b> .	
They can <b>pay in cash</b> , or <b>by cheque</b> / <b>check</b> or <b>credit card</b> .	* betale kontant / med kontanter * ... med check * kreditkort
<b>20</b> Many guests <b>gave</b> them <b>cash</b> for a <b>wedding present</b> / <b>gift</b> .	* give ng. ngt. * kontanter * som bryllupsgave
As the honeymooners <b>got</b> quite a lot of cash as <b>wedding presents</b> / <b>gifts</b> , they <b>pay</b> ( <b>in</b> ) <b>cash</b> .	* få ngt. > * i bryllupsgave * betale kontant / med kontanter
As they <b>pay</b> £ 980 <b>in cash</b> ( <b>for</b> both of them ), the <b>pay</b> their tour <b>in cash</b> .	* betale ngt. kontant / med kontanter * =
<b>Paying</b> for the vacation <b>cash</b> `down E/E&A up `front, they <b>pay</b> for the vacation <b>with</b> immediate <b>payment</b> in <b>cash</b> .	* kontant på stedet * & med kontant betaling her og nu
A discount is offered for immediate <b>cash payment</b> .	* kontant betaling
Some people have a <b>current</b> E/A <b>checking account</b> together with a <b>cheque</b> > E/A <b>checkbook</b> or a <b>cash card</b>	* anfordrings- / check- * konto * checkhæfte * ~ hævekort
<b>30</b> so they can <b>take money out</b> ( of the <b>account</b> ) at any time.	* ~ hæve penge ( på konto )
<b>Making</b> a <b>cheque</b> E/A <b>check out</b> to the agency, a <b>payer</b> <b>writes</b> a <b>cheque</b> / <b>check</b> for an amount of money, and when he has signed it, it's <b>payable to</b> the agency.	* udstede / skrive en check til ng. * betaler * skrive en check på ( beløb ) * betalbar til ng.
The agency <b>cashes</b> the <b>cheque</b> / <b>check</b> in the bank where they <b>draw</b> the money <b>on</b> the <b>holder's account</b> .	* indløse ... * trække ( penge ) * på > * indehavers * konto
Some people <b>pay</b> by <b>postal order</b> E/A <b>money order</b> in monthly <b>payments</b> .	* betale ( via ) postanvisning * i ... betalinger
So they can <b>make</b> their <b>payments</b> ( <b>for</b> their travel ) at a <b>post office</b> or in a <b>bank</b> .	* foretage / gøre en betaling ( * for ngt. ) * på et posthus * i en bank

**762 Packing** some important clothes, the honeymooners

start **packing for** their holiday **in good time**.

**Packing separate suitcases**, they **each pack** a suitcase.

**Each of** them **packs** a **suitcase**; they **pack** a suitcase **each**.

They **pack** a few **essentials / necessities** **into** their  
**hand luggage** eE/eA **hand baggage**

and all the rest **into** their **suitcases**.

Some people travel so much they **wear** () **out** suitcases.

**Hand baggage** or **carry-on baggage** (A) is the **bags**

**10** and **cases** you can **take on** a **flight**

and **carry with** you ( **take with you** in the **cabin** ).

They only want to bring **wearable** clothes and **footwear**.

So they only bring **casual clothes** and shoes

for **everyday wear** (U).

They bring clothes designed for **wear** in hot climates,  
usually in cotton, **plain** or **printed**.

John realizes his **trainers** or **training shoes** E/A

**sneakers** are showing worrying signs of **wear**.

They are, in fact, not only beginning to **wear** `out (vi),

**20** they **are / have** actually **worn out** ( vt / vi ).

There are **worn patches** on the **leather uppers**,  
and the **soles** are so **worn** that he has almost **worn a hole**  
( **in them** ).

When he **wore** () `out his **tennis shoes** last year,  
he made an effort to **chuck** `away / **out** his **worn-out** shoes  
and **throw away / out** his **worn-out** clothes.

Some trainers don't seem to be **wearing well**.

in spite of normal **wear** and **tear**.  
teê

He won't **pack** his **suitcase with worn** clothes

**30** or a pair of **worn** shoes.

So he goes to a store where they sell a wide range of  
**casual wear**, such as **leisurewear** and **sportswear**  
both **men's wear**, **women's wear** and **children's wear**.

He buys a pair **lightweight hiking / walking boots**  
of high quality which will **stand up to** the **wear** that active  
**wearers** give their **footwear**.

The boots are **wearable** in all kinds of weather.

'You'll get years of **wear** out of these high quality boots,'  
the shop assistant assures him.

\* pakke ngt.

\* pakke til ngt.

\* i god tid

\* pakke > \* hver sin > \* kuffert \* hver især ... ..

\* hver af ( dem ) pakke > \* kuffert \* hver ... ..  
~ ... hver sin ...

\* pakke ngt. ned i > \* fornødenheder  
nødvendige ting

\* håndbagage

\* ned i ... kuffert

\* slide ngt. op

\* håndbagage ( på flyrejse ) \* taske  
pose

\* kasse, etui \* tage (ngt.) med på en flyvetur  
mappe, taske

\* selv have (ngt.) med sig \* tage ngt. med sig \* kabine

\* ~ behagelig at have på / gå med \* fodtøj

\* uformel \* klæder  
/ tøj

\* hverdagsbrug

\* brug

\* ~ ensfarvet \* ~ mønstret

\* træningssko, gummisko  
sportssko  
\* slid

\* forfalde af slid  
blive slidt op

\* slide ngt. op / blive slidt op

\* slidt \* område \* ~ overlæder  
plet

\* sål \* slidt \* slide hul

\* i ngt.

\* slide ngt. op

\* kyle ngt. ud \* udslidt

\* smide ngt. ud

\* holde særlig godt

\* ~ slitage ( \* sliden \* riven )

\* pakke sin kuffert med ngt. \* slidt

\* =

\*

\* uformel \* beklædning \* fritidstøj \* sportstøj  
afslappet tøj

\* herrebeklædning \* dame- \* børne-  
/ -tøj

\* letvægts \* vandrestøvle

\* holde til \* brug  
slid

\* bruger \* fodtøj

\* egnet til at have på / gå med

\* brug, nytte

\*

763 The stewardesses' **faces wear** a welcoming **grin / smile**.

**Wearing / having** a welcoming **grin / smile on** their **face**,

the stewardesses watch the passengers **boarding** the **plane**  
and guide them up the **gangway** E/A **aisle**.

At their arrival the plane lands **barely** a minute later than  
they were **scheduled to** arrive.

`\$edju~ld E/A `sked\$uld

As they get out of the plane, they feel the sun **warm on**  
their **bare** arms.

At their arrival, they get **coupons** and **vouchers**,

`ku~pânz `vaut\$éz

**10 issued** by various shops and restaurants.

**Redeemable against** food at the restaurants, and against  
a **purchase** at a **chain store** / E& **multible** ( `store / shop ),  
or any of its **branches**, the coupons and vouchers  
can be **redeemed at** these places.

They are **accommodated** in a small hotel in Greek style.

ê`kâmêdeitid

The newly established hotel has just been **christened**.

`krisend

It has been **christened** ' The Pearl '.

The small hotel has **barely** 20 rooms.

They are guided to their room **up** a **bare tiled** staircase.

**20** The room has a **bare tile floor**, and **the bare minimum** of  
furniture.

The walls are **bare** except for a crucifix and a **bare** shelf.

**Wandering** ( around ) the streets, they often **salivate**

as they see or smell the food in the restaurants.

As an **unconditioned reflex**, the **salivary glands** start  
producing **saliva** also called **spit** or **spittle**.

sê`laivê

In the streets you never see **barelegged** greek men.

Unlike the tourists, who often **wear shorts**,

they never **walk (around)** the streets **with bare legs**.

**30** As the Greek men never walk the `streets **barelegged**  
they always **wear trousers** E/A **pants** or **jeans**.

Many tourists like to buy even **artless souvenirs**  
as a **memento / remembrance** of something.

su~vê`niêz / `su~

Many souvenirs are **mass-produced** and rather cheap  
while real **antiquities** may **cost** an **arm** and a **leg**.

Seeing an **alleged antique** that **tickles** their **fancy**,  
some tourists **pay** an **arm** and a **leg** for an **antique object**  
while others **pay through** their **nose** for a **fake**.

Some people just buy some holiday **novelties**.

\* ~ ngs. ansigt udtrykker ngt.

\* ~ med et smilende ansigtsudtryk

\* gå ombord i flyet

\* midtergang

\* kun

\* planlægge ngt. til at -

\* varme på ngt.

\* bar

\* kuponer

\* kupon

\*

\* indløselig mod ( at få ) ngt.

\* ( ind-) køb \* kædeforretning \* =  
& med forskelligt udvalg

\* afdeling

\* indløse ngt.

\* indlogeret

\* døbe / navngive ngt.

\* ... ngt. ngt.

\* bare / blot / kun

\* opad

\* bar

\* flise- / klinkebelagt

\* bar

\* flise- / klinkegulv

\* det blotte mindstemål

\*

\* bar

\* tom

\* gå omkring i ngt.

\* få mundvand

\*

\* ubetinget refleks

\* spytkirtel

\* spyt  
mundvand

\* =

\* barbenet

\* gå med ...

\* gå omkring i ngt.

\* med bare ben

\* barbenet

\* lange bukser

\* & cowboybukser

\* uden kunstnerisk kvalitet

\* souvenir

\* påmindelse om ngt.

\* masseproduceret

\* oldtidslevn \* ~ koste en bondegård  
genstand fra antikken / det hvide ud af øjnene

\* påstået \* antikvitæt \* pirre ngs. \* forestilling  
( om at opnå ngt. )

\* ~ betale i dyre domme for ngt.

\* antik genstand

\* betale alt for meget

\* falskneri

\* småkram ( som dekoration / legetøj etc. )

<b>764</b> After a few days, they discover a small well hidden,	*
beautifully situated <b>naturist / nudist / nude</b> beach	* naturist / nudist / nøgen
<b>barely</b> half an hour's walk from their hotel.	* kun
<b>Nudism</b> is the idea that it's natural and healthy not to wear	* nudisme
any clothes ( ~ be maked <b>from top to toe / head to foot</b> ).	* fra top til tå
The guests <b>pay</b> an <b>admission fee</b> at the entrance.	* betale entre ( * adgang * betaling )
If you <b>pay</b> a <b>membership fee</b> to the naturist club	* betale ngt. > * medlemskontingent * til ng&t
the <b>beach pass</b> will <b>pay for itself</b> after only about two visits.	* strandkort * ~ tjene sig hjem / sig selv ind
The beach is still not <b>paying its `way</b> , they say.	* dække egne omkostninger
<b>10</b> People <b>strip naked</b> , and wander around the beach	* klæde sig af til skindet ( nøgen )
<b>wearing</b> no <b>clothes</b> / without any clothes on / <b>stark naked</b>	* ~ uden tøj på * splittennøgen
( <b>A&amp; buck naked / naked as a jaybird</b> ).	* = * = ( jay: skovskade )
Going to the beach, they <b>bare</b> their bodies <b>to</b> the sun,	* blotte ngt. mod ngt.
and enjoy <b>sunbathing</b> and swimming <b>in the nude</b> .	* solbade * ~ nøgen
The salt water may <b>itch</b> their eyes.	* få ngt. til at klø
Their eyes get <b>itchy</b> and <b>itch</b> for a while.	* kløende * klø
Sometimes the sand is so hot they have to <b>wear sandals</b> .	* have sandaler på gå med ...
People may <b>wear</b> a <b>watch</b> or a little bit of <b>jewellery</b> ,	* have ngt. på * armbåndsur * skykker
just like the honeymooners are <b>wearing</b> their <b>wedding rings</b> .	* = * gifting
<b>20</b> A <b>piece</b> of <b>jewelry</b> (A) may contain an <b>irritant</b> substance	* smykke
which <b>irritates</b> sensitive skin and <b>cause irritation to</b> the skin.	* irritere ngt. * forårsage irritation af ngt.
As the strong sun can be <b>wearing on</b> the eyes, some	* belastende / trættende for ngt.
people <b>wear sunglasses</b> , a <b>sunhat</b> or a <b>cap</b> with a big <b>peak</b> .	* ~ have solbriller på * solhat * kasket * skygge
Some people wear sunglasses with <b>power</b> for reading,	* styrke
for <b>seeing</b> things <b>close `to / up</b> or for <b>seeing far</b> .	* se ngt. * tæt på * se > * langt
Some people <b>wear contact lenses</b> .	* ~ gå med > * kontakt- * linse
Liz did some work as a <b>nude model</b> when she was	* nøgenmodel
in college.	*
<b>Posing nude</b> , she was drawn or painted while <b>nude</b> .	* posere nøgen * nøgen
<b>30</b> Making <b>nudes</b> - images of <b>naked bodies</b> - is part of	* kunstværk af nøgent menneske * nøgen krop
the art study.	*
<b>Lightly</b> or <b>scantily</b> { <b>dressed / clad</b> young women	*
easily <b>tickle</b> the <b>imagination</b> of many men.	*
<b>Salivating at / over</b> women more or less <b>undressed</b> ,	* savle over / have lyst til / * afklædt
some men <b>slobber / drool over</b> naked or half naked women.	* = * være overdrevent vild med ngt.
As an <b>attraction</b> , some films contain <b>scenes</b> of <b>nudity</b> .	* trækplaster * nøgenscene
As a <b>draw</b> , there may be several <b>nude scenes</b> in the film.	* = * =
A film is an <b>attraction</b> / a <b>draw</b> if it <b>attracts / draws</b>	* & tilløbsstykke
large audiences.	*

<b>765 Drunk with joy</b> the honeymooners one night stay out late	* beruset af glæde
having quite a few drinks.	*
Liz, in <b>high spirits</b> , lures her <b>high-spirited</b> husband	* i højt humør * humørfyldt
into demonstrating to her some <b>ballet steps</b> .	* ballettrin
<sup>`balei / A&amp; ba`lei</sup> Her <b>flattery</b> tickles his <b>vanity</b> .	* smiger * pirre ngs. forfængelighed
So, <b>intoxicated by / with wine</b> and <b>joy</b> , John <b>makes</b>	* beruset af > * vin * glæde * gøre >
a <b>hilarious attempt at</b> dancing ballet <b>to the vast amusement</b>	* urkomisk * forsøg på at - * til stor morskab / moro >
<sup>hi`leêriês</sup> <b>of</b> everybody <b>round about</b> their table.	* for ng. rundt omkring ngt.
As he realizes everybody <b>is tickled</b> by his performance	* pirre ( more / opildne ) ng.
<b>10</b> his <b>face wears</b> an <b>air of triumph</b> .	* ngs. ansigt udtrykker * en triumferende mine
It really <b>tickles</b> everybody <b>to</b> watch him.	* more ng. at -
Some of the onlookers <b>are tickled`pink / to death</b> to see	* more sig kosteligt / halvt ihjel ( over at - )
his <b>unintentionally comic</b> attempts at a <b>balletic leap</b> .	* ufrivilligt * komisk * ballet (-mæssig) * hop spring
So his performance has a certain <b>novelty value</b> ,	* nyhed (-s-) * værdi
but the fun of it soon <b>wears thin</b> .	* blive forslidt
It was funny for a while but the <b>novelty</b> soon <b>wore`off</b> .	* det nye nyhedsinteressen * fortage sig svinde
Suddenly feeling ( like ) a complete idiot, he stops dancing.	*
Returning to his wife, he warns her jokingly,	*
' You'll <b>pay for</b> this – I'll <b>pay you back for</b> making me look	* ~ bøde for ngt. * ~ hævne sig på ng. for at -
<b>20</b> ( like ) a fool in front of everyone.	*
<b>Ready for bed</b> , they <b>reel</b> home, and hurry to bed.	* klar > * til sengen * slingre ( hjem ) ~ sengeklar
Liz has soon closed her eyes, and as her feet stick out	*
under the blanket, it <b>catches / takes / tickles</b> John's <b>`fancy</b> .	* fange / tiltrække / pirre ngs. lyst til ngt.
Intent on <b>giving</b> her a (little) <b>tick</b> le as a revenge	* give ng. en kildetur
he starts <b>tickling</b> her <b>feet</b> .	* kilde > * fødder
As she's probably too intoxicated to feel much, she,	*
however, neither laughs nor reacts in any way for quite a while	*
until she just <b>grunts</b> in her sleep,' Stop <b>tickling</b> ( me ).'	* grynte * kilde ( ng.)
So John is wise enough to let her sleep in peace.	*
Having been the <b>worse for wear / drink</b> ,	* medtaget * meget fulde
<b>30</b> they look terrible in the morning.	*
They are <b>paying</b> the <b>`penalty / price for</b> the late night.	* tage straffen / betale prisen for ngt.
They are <b>paying</b> the <b>penalty / price for</b> drinking too much.	* ... at gøre ngt.
They take a <b>headache tablet</b> and hope they won't feel	* hovedpinepille
as bad when the effect <b>wears`off</b> .	* klinge af
Some painkilling drugs can <b>irritate</b> the stomach <b>lining /</b>	* irritere ngt. * væg ( i indre organer )
the <b>lining</b> of the stomach.	* =
They <b>are tickled to</b> discover that they have both been	* more sig over at -
laughing and complaining in their sleep.	*

<b>766</b> The next day, their <b>noses</b> start <b>running</b>	* næsen løber		
They <b>have</b> a <b>tickle</b> in their throats and noses.	* have en kildren i ngt.		
Having <b>snotty</b> and <b>running / runny noses</b> ,	* snottet		* næse der løber
<b>sticky mucus tickles</b> their throats and noses.	* klæbrig, sej	* slim	* kildre ngt.
As their throats and noses <b>tickle</b> , both of them start	* kildre		
<b>sneezing</b> and <b>coughing</b> and <b>blowing</b> their <b>noses</b> .	* nyse	* hoste	* pudse næse
<sup>`káfing</sup> At times, thin mucus runs from their <b>nostrils</b> .	* næsebor		
At times, thick mucus or, <b>to use plain language / English //</b>	* snot		* sige det rent ud
<b>to put it bluntly</b> , <b>snot</b> fills their <b>nasal cavities</b> .	* =		* næsehule
<sup>`neizêl</sup> <b>10</b> Having caught a cold, they have in fact <b>caught</b> a <b>disease</b>	* få en sygdom		
caused by certain <b>micro-organisms</b> ( <b>microbes</b> or <b>germs</b> )	* mikroorganisme		* mikrobe
<sup>maikrêu`â-gênizmz`maikrêubz`dšênz</sup> such as <b>bacteria</b> ( sg: bacterium ) or (a) <b>virus</b> .	* & sygdomskim bakterie	* virus ( -art )	
<sup>`vairês</sup> The germs cause (a) <b>bacterial</b> or <b>virus / viral infection</b>	* bakterie	* virus / viral	* infection
followed by a bacterial disease or a <b>virus</b> (disease).	* bakteriel		
	* virussygdom		
An <b>infection</b> in the <b>nasal cavity</b> and in the <b>throat</b>	* infektion i ngt.	* næsehule	* ( indre ) hals
<sup>`neizl</sup> makes the body <b>mobilize</b> the immune system.	* mobilisere ( immunsystemet )		
<b>Infected with</b> bacteria or virus, and filled with germ-fighting	* inficeret / smittet med ngt.		
white blood cells, the <b>mucous membranes</b> swell,	* slimhinde		
<sup>`mju-kês</sup> increase their <b>secretion</b> of <b>mucus</b> , and get <b>irritated / sore</b> .	* sekretion	* slim	* irriteret / øm
	* afsondring		
<b>20</b> The first times, they <b>blow</b> their <b>noses</b> on a <b>handkerchief</b> ,	* ... i ngt.		* ( stof- ) lommetørklæde
( a <b>hankie / &gt;ky</b> ) later on large quantities of <b>tissues / Kleenex</b>	* =		* ( papir- ) =
and <b>toilet paper / toilet tissue</b> .	* toiletpapir		
At times, thick mucus gets stuck in their <b>airway</b> between	* luftvej (-ene )		
the lungs and the nose, and <b>makes</b> their breathing <b>difficult</b> .	* hæmme / vanskeliggøre ngt.		
The airway ( also called the <b>respiratory tract / passages</b> )	* =		
<sup>ri- / re- / rê`spaiêteri // ri`spirêteri // `respireitêri / -rêteri</sup> consists of the <b>bronchial tubes</b> , the <b>windpipe ( trachea )</b> ,	* bronkie		* luftrøret ( = )
the <b>throat</b> , and the <b>nasal passages</b> .	* (indre) hals		* næse luftvejene
It causes them to <b>cough</b> a lot, and sometimes <b>cough</b> ( ) <b>up</b>	* hoste		* ... ngt. op
a lump of <b>phlegm</b> that are either swallowed or <b>spit out</b> .	* klump	* ophostet slim	* spytte ngt. ud
<sup>flem</sup> <b>30</b> People who <b>spit</b> /E& <b>gob</b> in the streets leave <b>blobs / gobs</b>	* klat		
of <b>spit</b> and <b>snot</b> .	* spyt		* snot
<b>Pestered</b> by a <b>irritated</b> , <b>ticklish</b> and <b>tickling</b> throat,	* plaget af ngt.	* irriteret	* kildrende
		ø m	
and an <b>irritating</b> , <b>tickling / ticklish cough</b> ,	* irriterende		* = * hoste
they are feeling <b>unwell</b> and <b>indisposed</b> for a <b>day</b> or <b>so</b> .	* utilpas	* & ude af stand til at >	* ( i ) en dags tid
<sup>indi`spêuzd</sup>		være til stede	
<b>Tissue</b> (U), such as / as for instance { <b>mucous membrane</b> /	* væv		* slimhinde
skin / muscle / bone / nerve tissue, is an <b>aggregate</b> of	* samlet mængde af ngt.		
similar cells and cell products forming a definite kind of	*		
structual material in an animal or plant.	*		

<b>767</b> After some days of relaxation on the beach, they want to	*		
take a boat and visit <b>Turkey</b> quite close by / nearby.	* Tyrkiet		
Their bags are light, packed with <b>only</b> the <b>bare necessities</b> .	* kun det allermest nødvendige		
In a square, there's a statue of a soldier with a <b>bare sabre</b> .	* ~ trukket sabel		
The War of Greek Independence ( 1821 – 1832 )	* `seibê		
established a Greek state independent of the <b>Ottoman Empire</b> .	* det osmanniske rige		
At sea the heat is <b>tempered</b> by a cool breeze.	* temperere ngt.		
<b>Nausea</b> and <b>vomiting</b> are the symptoms of <b>seasickness</b> .	* kvalme	* opkastning	* søsyge
Fortunately, none of them <b>get(s) / feel(s) seasick</b> .	* blive / føle sig søsyg		
Travelling by boat <b>makes</b> some people <b>nauseous / queasy</b> .	* gøre ng. kvalmesyg		
<b>10 Feeling nauseous / queasy</b> , they feel like <b>throwing`up</b> .	* føle sig kvalmesyg		* kaste op
<b>Feeling nausea</b> , they want to <b>vomit</b> .	* føle kvalme		* kaste op, brække sig
Every time a <b>feeling</b> / a <b>wave</b> of <b>nausea sweeps over</b> them,	* følelse / bølge ( ~ anfald ) af ...		* ( feje henover ) ~ vælde op i ng.
they feel like <b>vomiting</b> ( <b>up</b> ) all they've got in their stomach.	* kaste ngt. op		
At a <b>sail in rough sea</b> , a ship may become filthy with <b>vomit</b>	* sejltur	* i høj sø	* bræk, opkast
so the <b>nauseating / nauseous</b> smell <b>nauseates</b> more people.	* kvalmende		* give ng. kvalme
At times there has been <b>`sabre-rattling</b> E/A <b>saber rattling</b>	* sabel-		* raslen
between Greece and Turkey.	*		
From c. 1300 – 1922 Turkey was the <b>core of</b> the Ottoman	* kerne i ngt.		
Empire.	*		
A <b>Turk</b> is a native or inhabitant of Turkey.	* tyrker		
<b>20</b> Under <b>Kemal`Atatürk</b> , who ruled as a virtual dictator,	* =		
the new Republic of Turkey was declared in 1923	*		
and rapidly <b>westernized</b> ; the arab alphabet was replaced	* vestliggjort		
the <b>Roman`alphabet</b> ; Islam was <b>disestablished</b> , religious	* latinske alfabet		* adskilt ( fra staten )
orders were abolished and women <b>were enfranchised</b> .	* få stemmeret		
The vast majority of the <b>Turkish</b> population are Muslims.	* tyrkisk		
In some cultural <b>spheres</b> most women wear a <b>headscarf</b> .	* kreds		* hovedtørklæde
In other cultural spheres the women go about <b>bareheaded</b>	* barhovedet		
as they wish.	*		
<b>Veiled</b> women are a rare sight in Turkey.	* tilsløret		
<b>30</b> In some Islamic / Muslim countries most women wear	*		
a headscarf or <b>wear</b> a <b>veil</b> .	* bære slør		
As some advocates of Islam don't tolerate <b>barefaced</b>	* ~ utilsløret		
or <b>barehead(ed)</b> Muslim women to <b>go about</b> in <b>public places</b> ,	* barhovedet	* gå omkring	* ( på ) offentlig sted
some Muslim women never leave their home <b>barehead(ed)</b> ,	* =		
and some only go about <b>veiled</b> in public.	* tilsløret		
In some Islamic countries most women <b>veil</b> ( their face ).	* tilsløre sig ( ... ansigtet )		

Look at page 800 !

<b>768</b> Having spent one night in the Turkish port, they want to make a trip through a part of the interior of the country.	*	
The get up early, but <b>barely / only just</b> have time to catch the bus.	*	
They have <b>barely got on / boarded</b> the bus when the driver starts the engine.	* kun lige	
The engine <b>coughs</b> and <b>sputters / splutters</b> , before it <b>goes dead</b> , probably <b>flooding</b> .	*	
The driver gets out of the bus, opens the <b>bonnet</b> E/A <b>hood</b>	* kun lige	* stige på ...
<b>10</b> and <b>fiddles / tinkers with</b> the <b>flooded</b> engine.	*	
To judge by his gestures it seems a <b>finicky</b> /E& <b>fiddly job</b> .	* fingerere / pille ved ngt. nørkle med ngt.	* druknet ( motor )
The engine <b>is</b> a bit of a <b>fiddle</b> to fix.	* krævende arbejde med hænderne pillearbejde / nørkleri	
When he restarts the motor, the bus <b>starts</b> without trouble.	* =	
At the first part of the way, the road <b>winds</b> ( its way ) <b>along</b> a <b>rocky</b> coast.	* & begynde at køre	
After a while the road turns into a <b>winding</b> mountain road.	* sno / bugte sig langs ngt.	
As the road <b>winds</b> ( its way ) <b>up</b> the mountain, the <b>scattered / sparse</b> vegetation <b>gives way / yields to bare rock</b> .	* klippefyldt / klippe- ( kyst )	
<b>20</b> The <b>bareness</b> of the rough landscape, and the <b>rifts</b> in the <b>ground</b> and the <b>rock</b> are impressing.	* snoet	
<b>On one side</b> and soon <b>on all sides / in all direction</b> , they <b>have</b> a <b>view of</b> only a <b>bare rock wall / mountainside</b> .	* sno sig opad ngt.	
Eventually they <b>pass</b> the <b>pass</b> and start <b>riding downhill</b> .	* spredt / sparsom	* vige / give plads for ngt.
<b>Instinctively / by `instinct</b> they are both <b>fiddle with</b> their wedding rings as the bus <b>tears down</b> the mountain road.	* nøgen klippe	
At the last part of the way where <b>it goes downhill</b> , the road follows the river <b>winding</b> its way <b>through</b> the valley.	* nøgenhed	
The river has <b>worn</b> a <b>winding course through</b> the valley.	* sprække / spalte i >	* jord
<b>30</b> In (the) spring, when the sun <b>melts</b> the snow and ice, the <b>meltwater swells</b> the river.	* til den ene side	* klippe
When the snow and ice <b>melt</b> and the river <b>swells</b> , and becomes a <b>raging torrent</b> , the strong current <b>carries along</b> stones which, for thousands of years, have <b>worn</b> ( ) <b>away</b> rock from the river bed and its banks.	* have udsigt til ngt.	* på alle sider / i alle retninger
The current has <b>worn</b> rock and stones <b>smooth</b> .	* pas	* nøgen klippevæg / bjergside
As the river is low in the summer vast stretches of clay, mud, silt, sand, gravel, pebbles, and boulders are <b>laid bare</b> .	* instinktivt	* køre ned ad bakke
	* suse nedad ngt.	* pille ved ngt.
	* gå nedadbakke	
	* bugtende	* sno sig vej gennem
	* slide ngt. >	* bugtende
	* smelte ngt.	* forløb
	* smeltevand	* gennem ngt.
	* smelte	* få ngt. til at vokse / svulme
	* rasende	* svulme op
	* føre ngt. med sig	* rivende strøm
	* slide ngt. væk	
	* slide ngt. + adj.	* glat jævnt
	*	
	* ( være ) blotlagt	

**769** The traffic has **worn** ( ) **away** the vegetation along the narrow road, and local people and domestic animals have **worn** a **track** along the river.

In the old days, crossing the **mountain chain** was a **dangerous undertaking**.

Travelling in the bus, a passenger starts to **feel dizzy**.

As a **feeling / wave** of **nausea** and **dizziness** **sweeps over** him, he starts to feel **carsick**.

**Getting / being carsick**, he suffers from **carsickness**

**10** resulting from the rocking and swaying motion of the bus.

The driver stops the bus to let the **carsick** passenger get off and **throw up / vomit**.

When John and Liz eventually get off at a small town in the valley, John happens to notice the tyres of the bus.

They are **the worse for wear**.

The **tread** (C) **on** the tyres has **worn`down** almost totally.

The tyres are **worn** far **below** the legal **limit** of **tread** (U).

**Kilometres** of **wear** on rough roads has almost **worn** ( ) **down** the tread.

**20** The honeymooners start **strolling** through the streets.

Once in a while, they are met or overtaken

by a **`bareback rider**.

The local farmers carry crops and **ride bareback on** horses, mules and donkeys /E& **asses** (o-f).

A stray dog **communicates** its anger **by baring** its teeth and **growling** before it's chased away.

A horse **hitched to** a post is **pestered** by flies.

Having reached the outskirts of the town, they notice a **snotty** child **with bare feet**.

**30** Together with other **`barefoot / bare-footed** children

**in ragged clothes**, he runs around **in bare feet**.

Having noticed an adult **without** any shoes **on** ( his feet ),

walking around the streets **`barefoot / bare-footed**,

John and Liz soon see more adults **wearing** no **shoes**.

The sight of the poor people **going barefoot / bare-footed**, having **worn** their clothes **to rags** affects both of them deeply.

In many areas it's hard to make farming **pay**.

Powerty **wears** ( ) **`down** people.

\* slide ngt. væk

\*

\* slide et spor / en sti

\* bjergkæde

\* farligt >

\* foretagende

{ vovestykke }

\* føle sig >

\* svimmel

\* følelse /  
bølge af >

\* kvalme

\* svimmelhed

\* ( fejte henover ) ~ vælde over ng.

\* køresyg

\* blive / være ...

\* køresyge

\*

\* køresyg

\* kaste op, brække sig

\*

\*

\* ~ nedslidt

\* slidbane

\* ( for-) svinde pga. slid

\* være slidt ned under ngt.

\* slidbanegrænse  
/ - mindstemål

\* kilometervis ( af )

\* brug / slid

\* slide ngt. ned

\* slentre

\*

\* rytter uden sadel

\* ride >

\* uden sadel

\* på ngt.

\* æsel

\* udtrykke ngt. ved at

\* blotte ngt.

\* knurre

\* tøjre ngt. til ngt.

\* plage ng.

\*

\* snottet

\* med bare fødder

\* barfodet

\* i laset tøj  
/ pjaltede klæder

\* på bare fødder

\* uden sko ( på fødderne )

\* barfodet

\* uden sko på

\* gå barfodet

\* slide ngt. i laser

\* betale sig

\* nedslide / nedbryde ng.

**770** Suddenly John **swelters**, and has to sit down.

As the houses only **cast** short **shadows in** the **sweltering**  
**midday sun**, it's difficult to find a place to sit **in** the **shade**  
and **shelter from** the sun.

He has probably **got** ( a **touch of** ) **sunstroke** (U).

A **ragged** little girl **with bare feet** who notices the incident  
rushes into a nearby newly built house.

Soon after, she returns followed by her father

and mother who offer the sick John a **jug / pitcher** of water.

**10** Having taken some large **gulps / swallows** of water,  
he **sprinkles / splashes / splatters** cold water **on** his **face**.

Having **sprinkled / splashed / splattered** his head **with**  
cold water, he feels much better.

So he has probably just **got a touch of the sun**.

He **gave / paid no heed** at the time, but now he must admit  
that neglecting his mother's advice and warnings

he has **made a fool /E& an ass** of **himself**.

The girl's father, who speaks a little bit of English,  
invites the couple to come in and rest a bit

**20 in the delicious cool** (<ness ) of the house.

The walls are **bare** except for an old **fiddle / violin** with  
only one string, and a clock that has to be **wound** ( ) **up**.

Liz wonders who used to **fiddle** ( or play the **violin** ),  
and wonders when a **fiddler** has last **played on** the **fiddle**.

Although an old grandmother is **barely able** to walk, she  
**fiddles / tinkers** { **about / around** ( **with** all kinds of things ) .

Taking care of **fiddling** little jobs around the house,  
she once in a while **murmurs** something **barely audible**.

A **bare / naked bulb** **dangles from** the ceiling.

**30** Some little children run **naked** around **out on the patio**.

Running around ( the patio ) **bare-arsed** E/A **bare-assed**,  
they **barely / hardly acknowledge** the presence of  
the strangers.

The family has **barely enough** money to live on.

As the family have a hard time **paying** their **way**,  
they are short of even **the bare necessities**.

So they **are sorry** ( to say ) **that** they have little to offer  
**in the way** of **food** and **drink**.

\* føle sig utilpas / være ved at gå til af varme

\* kaste ... skygge \* i > \* smeltende  
ubehageligt varm  
\* middags- \* sol i skyggen

\* være beskyttet mod ngt.

\* få solstik

\* pjaltet \* med bare fødder

\*

\*

\* E: kande m. hank og hældetud \* = A  
A: krukke m. hank og lille åbning = E  
\* slurk

\* stænke / plaske / sprøjte ngt. på ngt.

\* ... ngt. med ngt.

\*

\* ( svagt ) solstik

\* ofre opmærksomhed

\*

\* ~ gøre sig selv til grin ( \* fjols, nar / æsel )

\*

\*

\* i > \* behagelige \* kølighed

\* violin

\* trække ngt. op

\* spille violin

\* ... på ...

\* kun lige akkurat

\* rumstere omkring ( og pille ved / ordne ngt. )

\* uvigtig  
irriterende

\* mumle, ~ hviske \* kun lige akkurat \* hørlig

\* nøgen \* pære \* hænge / dingle ( ned ) fra ngt.

\* = \* ude på patioen / i gårdhaven

\* med bar røv / nøgen

\* = \* knap nok \* reagere på ngt.  
næsten ikke

\*

\* << nok ( penge )

\* betale for det, de skal bruge

\* det absolut nødvendige  
mindstemålet af fornødenheder  
\* være ked af ( at måtte sige ) at -

\* ~ i form af / med hensyn til / \* mad og drikke  
hvad angår >

**771 In broken** English, the husband explains that since he finished military service, he hasn't been able to find a **permanent / steady job**.

Every time an employer has **paid** () **off** the husband, the family worry about when or whether he'll get a job again.

**Barely** 70 % of the inhabitants have a regular job, and many of the adults can **barely** read or write.

He has built the house virtually **with** his **bare hands** as he has had only **the bare essentials** in the way of equipment.

**10** He spends his time **fiddling / tinkering ( about / around )** **with** the house.

In the army, they were told to fight with **naked aggression** and taught how to fight **barehanded** and, **nakedly** aggressive, kill a man **with** their **bare hands**.

Most soldiers engaged in combat experience **naked fear**, as they must be prepared to **pay with** their **lives**.

Prisoners of war risk being **stripped naked**, and subjected to torture, even if it's against the **Geneva Convention**.

Made in Geneva, Switzerland in 1864 and followed by many nations, it established the rules for the human

**20** treatment of prisoners of war and of the sick, **the wounded** and the dead in battle.

All the time the wife is busy **darning ( worn socks )**.

The socks have had **holes worn in** the heels, the soles, and the toes.

Only when she **flicks** a fly **off / whisks** a fly **away** that keeps **tickling** her neck, she **interrupts** her work.

Hard use has **worn** the husbands clothes.

His **worn** old jeans have ( been ) **worn thin** at the knees, and the thread is starting to **wear away** at the seams.

**30** His shoes have **worn down** at the heels.

Suddenly, they hear a **moan** of **pain** from one of the kids.

He has got a **splinter / shard / sherd** in his foot.

If something **splinters** wood, glass or metal, it **splinters**.

The splinter is **barely visible / discernible / perceptible**; it's only just **visible** etc. **with / to** the **naked eye**.

Using ( a **pair of** ) **tweezers**, they try to remove the splinter.

\* på gebrokket

\*

\* fast arbejde

\* betale ng. deres fratrædelsesløn

\*

\* bare / blot / kun

\* kun akkurat / med besvær

\* med de bare hænder / næver

\* de mest grundlæggende ting

\* ( gå omkring og ) forbedre og reparere

\* på ngt.

\* utilsløret ...

\* med de bare næver

\* =

\* med de bare hænder / næver

\* utilsløret

\* betale med livet

\* klædt af til skindet

\* Geneve konventionen

\*

\*

\*

\* de sårede

\* stoppe ( ngt. ) ( med nål og tråd )

\* slidt

\* få hul slidt i ngt.

\*

\* vifte ngt. væk

\* kilde ngt.

\* afbryde ngt.

\* slidt ngt.

\* slide

\* blive tyndslidt vi & (vt )

\* slides bort / væk

\* slides ned

\* jamren / klagen / stønnen of smerte

\* splint

\* splindre ngt.

\* splintres

\* bare, blot  
kun lige akkurat  
... med / for >

\* synlig

\* skelnelig  
registrerbar  
\* ~ det blotte øje

\* =

\* pincet

772 As it's getting late, it suddenly <b>strikes</b> the honeymooners	* det slår / gå op for ng. > ( komme i tanker om )	
that they have to find a place to stay for the night.	* at -	
It <b>occurs to</b> them <b>that</b> they have to find a <b>pension</b> ,	* det går op for / slår ng. at -	* pension
<sup>ê' kē~z</sup> a <b>boarding house</b> , a <b>guesthouse</b> , or just some private	( komme i tanker om )	( på kontinentet )
<b>accommodation</b> .	* pension	* =
The greek couple <b>come to think of / remember</b> a couple	* indkvartering	
of places.	* komme i tanke om / huske på ng.	
The Turkish husband <b>finds</b> a pension <b>for</b> the honey>	*	
mooners.	* finde ngt. til ng.	
10 He <b>finds</b> the honeymooners a nice pension,	*	
run by an elderly widow.	* finde ng. ngt.	
It's said she's around her mid-sixties, but she's <b>worn well</b> .	* vise ng. vej til ngt.	
Quite right, she's <b>wearing well</b> – only a few wrinkles.	* holdt sig godt	
Having been <b>accommodated</b> well, the honeymooners	* holde sig godt	
<sup>ê' kāmêdeitid</sup> promise to <b>pay / make a call on</b> the Turkish family.	* indkvartere ng.	
They promise to <b>pay / make</b> the family a <b>call</b> the next day.	* aflægge et besøg hos ng.	
After a long hot day it's they put on <b>changes of underwear</b> .	* ... ng. et ...	
So they <b>change</b> their <b>underwear</b> .	* skifteeksemplar ( ~ et sæt skifte ) * undertøj	
It <b>tickles</b> John <b>to</b> hear that Liz's new silk chemise	* skifte ...	
20 <b>tickles</b> her <b>nipples</b> .	* more ng. at -	
<b>Tickling</b> his <b>imagination</b> , it <b>tickles</b> his <b>fancy</b>	* kilde ngt.	* brystvorter
but knowing they are much too tired, he chooses to ignore	* anspore ngs. fantasi	* ... lyst ( til ngt. )
an <b>incipient tickling</b> sensation.	*	
Going to bed, they realize that the sheets have <b>worn thin</b> .	* fremspirende	* kildrende
Completely <b>worn out</b> , they close their eyes <b>wearily</b>	* blive slidt tynd	
to the <b>chorous of chirping /E&amp; chirruping crickets</b> .	* træet	* på træet vis
<sup>`t\$irêping</sup> The next morning Liz tells John about her dream.	* kor	* ~ syngende > * cikade ( kvindre, pippe )
She dreamt that she had <b>roast turkey</b> for Christmas dinner.	*	
While she was eating <b>Turkish delight</b> for dessert,	* stegt kalkunkød	
30 a flock of <b>turkeys</b> had suddenly appeared, and,	* = ( ... glæde, henrykkelse, fryd )	
headed by an angry <b>gobbler</b> , they had <b>gobbled deafeningly</b> .	* kalkun	
Just as they had <b>set</b> the <b>scene / stage for</b> an attack,	* kalkunhan	* pludre * øredøvende
she has woken up in a <b>cold sweart / bathed in sweat</b> .	* lægge an til ngt.	
A turkey is a cock or hen of turkey ( a <b>turkey cock</b>	* i koldsved / badet i sved	
or <b>turkey hen</b> ) the name first applied to <b>guinea fowl(s)</b> (U,C)	* kalkunhane	
later ( by confusion ) to the American bird.	* -høne	* perlehøne / -høns
<sup>`gini faul</sup> <b>Turkish delight / paste</b> is a <b>sweet</b> E/A a <b>candy</b> made of	*	
fruit juice and <b>gelatin(e)</b> , <b>cubed</b> and <b>dusted with</b> sugar.	* =	* masse, pasta * slik
	* gelatine	* skåret i tern * strø ngt. med ngt.

**773** When John and Liz **pay / make a call** the next day  
as **promised**, they realize the boy has got a **swollen** foot.

**Yesterday evening**, his foot had begun to **swell** ( up ).

The splinter / shard / sherd has caused (an) infection  
which has caused pain and **swelling** / a painful **swelling**.

The honeymooners **insist (up)on** paying for the boy to be  
taken to a doctor.

They **insist (up)on a visit to a doctor**.

They **insist that** they consult a doctor.

**10** They **insist that** they (E&:should ) see a doctor.

They are **insistent that** they see a doctor.

As they are **insistent on** ( making ) a visit to a doctor,  
they **insist on** them / their going to a doctor.

**At** the honeymooner's **insistence**, they go to a doctor  
and the honeymooners **pay** the doctor **to** treat the foot.

Having been told about the honeymooners' **insistence that**  
the boy got / received medical treatment,  
the doctor expresses his respect for the honeymooners'  
**insistence on** ( providing ) medical treatment of the boy.

**20** Using a magnifying glass, a **scalpel** and **pinchers**,  
he is able to localize, cut out, and remove the rest of

the splinter, **invisible to / with the naked eye**.  
in`vizibél

A bacterial infection is **treatable** with penicillin.

The doctor is barely 30 years old, and already running  
a practice.

As the practice only has **the bare essentials** in the way of  
equipment, the doctor has **sought funding** / some **funds**  
but **the cupboard is bare**.  
`kúbéd

Many patients **have an unrelenting tickle** in their throat.

**30** Most of them have **got a smoker's cough**.

It's dry, **persistent** and **tickling / ticklish cough**  
and **cough mixture / syrup / medicine** will only alleviate /  
ease / mitigate the **relentless** symptoms.  
`sirép A& `sê~

The doctor treats the wound with a **healing ointment**  
**formulated** by the local ( **dispensing** ) **chemist** E/A **druggist**  
**to reduce** the **swelling** and the pain.

Already the next day there's **barely** / hardly any swelling.

' The pain has gone,' the boy **chirps** /E& **chirrup**s.  
`t\$irêps

\* komme på besøg

\* som lovet

\* hævet

\* i går aftes

\* svulme ( op )

\*

\* hævelse

\* & hævet område

\* insistere på / presse på for at -  
( holde fast på at )

\*

\* insistere på / presse på for ngt.  
( holde fast på ngt. )

\* lægebesøg

\* ... at

\* =

\* insisterende på at

\* ... ( at ) ngt.

\* insistere på at ng. gør ngt.

\* foranlediget af ng's insisteren / pressen på

\* betale ng. for at

\* insisteren / pressen på at

\*

\*

\* insisteren på ( at ) ngt.

\* skalpel

\* pincet

\*

\* usynlig for / med >

\* det blotte øje

\* behandlingsmulig

\*

\*

\* de mest grundlæggende ting

\* søge >

\* fondsmidler

\* fond

\* kassen er tom

\* have >

\* ubønhørlig  
uophørlig

\* kildren

\* have >

\* ~ rygerhoste

\* vedholdende

\* kildrende

\* hoste

\* hostesaft

\* ubønhørlig  
uophørlig

\* helende / lægende

\* salve

\* udformet >

\* ( af ) apoteker

\* til at -

\* & mindske >

\* hævelse

\* næsten ikke

\* kvidre

774 Liz and John want to <b>invite</b> the Turkish parents <b>out</b> .	* invitere ng. ud		
So they <b>invite</b> them <b>out for</b> dinner.	* ... til ngf.		
They <b>invite</b> them <b>for</b> a drink in the afternoon,	* invitere ng. på ngf.		
and <b>invite</b> them <b>to</b> ( eat ) dinner at a restaurant in the evening.	* ... til ngf.		
The Turkish couple feel <b>it's too kind</b> ( of Liz and John ),	* det er alt for venligt / meget ( ... venligt af ng. )		
but the honeymooners <b>insist / are insistent</b> .	* insistere / være vedholdende		
So having <b>taken out</b> the Turkish parents <b>for</b> a drink,	* tage / invitere ng. ud til ngf.		
the honeymooners <b>take</b> them <b>out for</b> dinner.	* =		
The <b>menu</b> has a collection of dishes to tempt their <b>palate</b> .	* menu (-kort)	* gane	
10 They have <b>goblets</b> for the ( very ) <b>palatable</b> wine.	* glas på stilk	~ smagsløg	
The guests at a table next to them <b>gobble</b> .	* æde i sig	* udmærket smagende	
<b>Gobbling</b> their food, they <b>gobble up / down</b> a huge menu.	* ... ngf. i sig	* =	
<b>Gobs</b> of spittle run down the chin of one of the <b>gluttons</b> .	* klat	* ( jærv ), grovæder	
Time after time, <b>crooking</b> their <b>finger for</b> the waiter,	* krumme >	slughals, ædedolk	
the gluttons <b>insistantly</b> demand the waiter's attention.	* ihærdigt	* finger efter ng.	
Their <b>insistant</b> demands obviously irritate everybody else.	vedholdende		
Having <b>stuffed</b> their <b>gobs</b> (E) with food, they want to <b>pay</b> .	* =		
The guest who wants to <b>pay</b> ( the waiter ) ( for their meal )	* proppe ngf.	* kæft	* betale
<b>gives</b> an impatient <b>cough</b> to catch the waiter's attention.	* betale ( ng. ) ( for ngf. )		
20 The honeymooner <b>party</b> finish their dinner	* give et host		
with <b>Turkish`coffee</b> , very strong black coffee	* selskab		
that you drink in small cups with sugar.	* tyrkisk kaffe		
They get <b>sugar lumps</b> /eA <b>cubes</b> ,	*		
but John takes his coffee with just a <b>blob / drop</b> of cream.	* sukkerknald		
The coffee <b>grounds</b> are left as <b>dregs</b> in the bottom.	* sjat		
Liz only has a <b>gobbet</b> of dessert.	* grums	* bundfald af grums og væske	
Although some of the food and drink tasted strange,	* lille smule		
at least <b>to</b> their <b>untrained palates</b> , Liz and John agree	*		
to have had some ( very ) <b>palatable</b> dishes, wine, coffee	* utrænet	* gane	
30 and spirits that had really <b>tickled</b> their <b>palates</b> .	* ~ udmærket smagende	~ smagsløg	
A little more particular, John, however found one of their	velsmagende		
delicacies / specialities quite <b>unpalatable</b> .	* pirre >	* gane	
Having enjoyed their meal, the honeymooners are happy	*		
to <b>pay</b> the <b>bill</b> and <b>pay for</b> their Turkish friends.	* uappetitlig, ubehageligt smagende		
They want to <b>compliment</b> the cook <b>on</b> the delicious meal.	*		
So seeing the cook, they <b>pay</b> a <b>compliment to</b> him.	* betale regningen	* betale for ng.	
They <b>praise</b> him <b>for</b> ( having prepared ) a delicious meal.	* rose ng. for ngf.		
A <b>swell</b> of <b>pride</b> is seen on him.	* give ng. ros		
He <b>swells with pride</b> at the compliment / praise.	* rose ng. for ngf.		
	* følelsesudbrud af stolthed		
	* fyldes af stolthed		



**776** Having arrived **at** the **airport**, the honeymooners go into the ( **air** ) **terminal** ( **building** ), and **check`in** for their **flight** at the **`check-in desk** where they get their **boarding passes** / **E& cards**.

They show their passports at the passport control, and then go through **security** where **security officers** carry out **security checks**; the officers check that the passengers are not carrying anything illegal.

The government has **imposed / levied / placed / put** **10 a duty on** certain goods i.e. a tax on something you buy.

So the government **levies / collects** (an) **excise duty**,  
(a) **customs duty** and (an) **import duty**.

In a **duty-`free** ( **shop** ) at the airport, people can buy **duty-`free** goods.

Liz and John do some **duty-free shopping**.

Buying **duty-free**, they buy a few **duty-`fre**s (E).

Waiting for their flight in the **departure lounge**, they **pay attention to** what is read **on** the **departure(s) monitor** and what is announced in the loudspeakers about their

**20 departure time** and when **boarding** takes place.

The **flights / planes are boarding** at a number of gates.

Shortly before the **scheduled** time / hour of their departure, a **delay** is announced **in** the departure of their plane.

Even if all aircrafts are checked regularly for **wear** and **tear**, a defect is detected by the pilots just before boarding.

As the mechanics have to check the equipment for **wear**, and take care to mend or repair the damage

the departure is **postponed for** an **indefinite period / time**.

The **patience** of the **weary** travellers is **wearing thin** **30** as their wait **wears on**.

As the afternoon **wears on**, they become more and more worried, tired and **irritable / crabby**.

**To** his **annoyance**, John steps on a **gob** of **gum**.

He gets **irritated about / at / with / by** the **chewing gum** which keeps sticking to his sole.

His **irritation at / with** ( trying to remove ) the **sticky mass** **shows**.

* til lufthavnen		
* terminalen	* tjekke ind til >	* flyvetur
* tjek-ind skranke	* boarding-	* pas
*		
*		
* sikkerhedskontrollen	* sikkerhedsmedarbejder	
* sikkerhedskontrol		
*		
* lægge >		
* afgift på ngt.		
* opkræve >		* afgiftsskat
* toldafgift		* importafgift
* toldfri forretning		
* =		
* =		* forretningsindkøb
* toldfrit		* toldfri vare
* afgangssventesal		
* være opmærksom på ngt.	* afgangss-	* skærm
*		
* afgangstid		* det at gå ombord
* fly / flyvetur >	* ~ tage passagerer ombord	
* berammet ( tid )		
* forsinkelse af ngt.		
* = slitage		
*		
* slid		
*		
* udsætte ngt.		* på ubestemt tid
* tålmodighed	* træet	* blive tyndslidt
* trække ud, slæbe sig afsted		
* slæbe sig afsted		
* irriteret		
* til ens misfornøjelse	* ( fugtig / klæbrig ) klump	* tyggegummi
* irriteret over ngt.		
*		
* irritation over ( at ) ngt.		
* vise sig		

<b>777</b> A impatient boy <b>pesters</b> his parents <b>for</b> sweets (E).	* plage ng. om ngt.	
They buy him a packet of <b>boiled sweets</b> .	* bolche	
Having finished the packet, being a real <b>pest</b> ,	* plage	
he continues to <b>pester</b> / <b>plague</b> / <b>badger</b> / <b>harry</b> his parents.	* plage ng.	
<b>Pestering</b> / <b>plaguing</b> / <b>badgering</b> / <b>harrying</b> them with	* ... med ngt.	
questions, he <b>pesters</b> / <b>badgers</b> them <b>to</b> buy more sweets.	* ... ng. om at	
He <b>irritatingly badgers</b> them <b>into</b> buying more candy (A).	* på irriterend vis	
The <b>snotty-</b> E/A <b>snot-nosed, homely</b> (A) boy is the most	* ~ mæg irriterende	* ~ grim
<b>irritating</b> child the honeymooners have seen for a long time.	* irriterende	
<b>10</b> Their <b>fingers itch to box</b> his <b>ears</b> .	* det klør i ngs. fingre for at	* give ng. en på ørerne / kassen
The boy's and his <b>pestering</b> is a constant <b>irritant</b> .	* plageri	* irritationsmoment
It's an <b>irritation</b> <b>for</b> them when they are trying to relax.	* irritation for ng.	
As the boy <b>turns on</b> the <b>waterworks</b> and keeps <b>pestering</b>	* ~ tude hysterisk	* plage
in a way even his parents <b>find</b> very <b>irritating</b> , the father	* finde ngt. irriterende	
eventually tells his <b>pestering</b> son to <b>shut</b> his <b>gob</b> (E).	* plagende	* holde ( sin ) kæft
The parents' <b>irritability</b> is very understandable	* irritabilitet	
and it's very understandable that the father reacts <b>irritably</b> .	* irriteret	
Their flight is <b>postponed until</b> next morning / in the morning.	* udsætte ngt. indtil	
Having a long <b>wait</b> is a <b>fly</b> in the <b>ointment</b> , so the pest	* ventetid	* ~ et skår i glæden
<b>20</b> of boy shows up not to be <b>the only fly</b> in the <b>ointment</b> .	* ~ det eneste skår i glæden	
The <b>hours wear on</b> until their flight <b>is called</b> in the morning.	* bekendtgøre ngt.	
They are told where the flight <b>is boarding</b> , an go to	* ~ tage passagerer ombord	
the announced <b>departure gate</b> in order to <b>get onto</b> the <b>plane</b> .	* afgangsgate	* gå ombord på flyet
When the pilots have <b>warmed ( ) up</b> the <b>motors</b>	* varme motorerne op	
the plane <b>takes off ( from</b> the <b>runway )</b> .	* lette	( * fra start- og landings bane )
Their plane lands barely a few minutes later than	*	
their <b>estimated arrival time / time of arrival</b> .	* anslået	* ankomsttid
Having gone to the <b>baggage reclaim</b> E/A <b>claim</b>	* baggageudleveringen	
to collect their bags, they go / pass through <b>customs</b>	* tolden	
<b>30</b> and <b>immigrations</b> , where the police and the customs	* immigrationskontrollen	
officers <b>on duty</b> check their passports and luggage.	* i tjeneste / på vagt	
<b>Going on duty</b> early in the morning, some police	* begynde tjenesten / vagten	
and customs officers are <b>on duty</b> early in the day.	* være i tjenesten / på vagt	
As they <b>go off duty</b> early in the afternoon, they are	* slutte ...	
are <b>off duty</b> most of the afternoon and the whole evening,	* udenfor tjeneste / ikke på vagt	
Having <b>cleared</b> their <b>baggage</b> ( through the customs ),	* få bagagen gennem tolden	
they go out into the <b>arrivals area</b> of the airport on their way	* området for ankommende	
to get out of the airport.	*	

# HOME AGAIN

<b>778</b> The <b>weary</b> couple take a taxi home to John's flat.	* udmattet, træt	
The long hours of travelling has <b>weared</b> the honeymooners.	* udmatte / trætte ng.	
Getting home has been a long and <b>wearying</b> journey.	* opslidende, udmattende trættende	
<b>Blighted</b> / <b>marred</b> / <b>ruined</b> by a lot of <b>wearisome</b> hours	* ( ngt.) skæmmet / ødelagt af ngt. * & kedelig	
spent in waiting, it's has been a long and <b>weary</b> journey.	* trættende, udmattende kedsommelig	
Looking <b>worn</b> ( <b>out</b> ), they <b>heave</b> /E& <b>hump</b> their luggage	* træt	* slæbe ngt. >
<b>up</b> the <b>stairs</b> , lock themselves in, and, completely <b>worn</b> ( <b>out</b> ),	* udmattet	
throw themselves into the nearest chairs.	* op ad trappen	* udmattet, træt
	*	
All the traveling has really <b>worn</b> them ( <b>out</b> ).	* udmatte / trætte ng.	
<b>10</b> The <b>refridgerator</b> / E& <b>fridge</b> is completely <b>bare</b> so they	* køleskab	* tom
have some <b>fast food</b> delivered and <b>pay</b> ( <b>cash</b> ) on <b>delivery</b> .	* & færdiglavet mad	* betale ( kontant ) ved levering
The <b>delivery man</b> wears a <b>crash helmet</b> .	* ( leverings- ) bud	* bære / have ngt. på
<b>Safety helmets</b> and <b>bicycle helmets</b> offer the <b>wearers</b>	* styrthjelm	* styrthjelm * bærer bruger
protection against head injury.	* cykelhjelm	
	*	
The young man can't help telling some terrible news.	*	
He has <b>passed by</b> an area <b>cordoned</b> ( ) <b>off</b> by the police.	* passere ngt.	* afspærre ngt.
A <b>passerby</b> had just found a body ( lying ) half <b>naked</b>	* forbipasserende	
on the ground, apparently <b>bled</b> to <b>death</b> .	* blødt ihjæl	
Some <b>alarmed passersby</b> told him that the body had	* opskræmt	* << ( pl. )
<b>20</b> been identified as a <b>resident</b> of the <b>block</b> of <b>flats</b> (E) //	* beboer	* beboelsesejendom
(E,A) the <b>tenement building</b> / <b>house</b> / <b>block</b> //	* = ( jævnere )	
(A) the <b>apartment house</b> right <b>beside</b> .	* =	* ved siden af
Behind the police <b>cordon</b> they were investigating whether	* afspærring	
they were <b>dealing with</b> an accident, a suicide or a crime.	* have at gøre med ngt.	
Shaken by the news, Liz and John don't feel like watching	*	
a <b>detective film</b> so they chose another film, less violent.	* ~ kriminalfilm	
The main character is a real <b>Turk</b> ,	* brutal og dominerende person	
while his business partner is just a <b>turkey</b> .	* tåbe skvadderhoved	
So when they <b>talk turkey</b> (A), the <b>big-headed</b> /	* tale alvorligt om forretninger	* indbildsk opblæst
<b>30</b> (A&) <b>swell-headed</b> turk believes he can fool his partner.	* =	
When he draws up a technical document,	*	
his partner usually says, ' It's all <b>gobbledegook</b> / < <b>dygook</b>	* uforståelig kancellistil volapyk	
to me, ' but signs it anyway.	*	
To their surprise, it turns out that the foolish partner	*	
is just pretending, and, in the end, succeeds in taking over	*	
the company, and in getting the <b>big head</b> send to prison.	* indbildsk / opblæst person	
The director's latest film was a real <b>flop</b> /A& <b>turkey</b> .	* flop fiasko	

<b>779</b> John's father <b>works in</b> education <b>at</b> language <b>school</b> .	* arbejde indenfor ngt.	* ... på en skole
Liz <b>works in</b> a bank, her mother <b>works with</b> children.	* ... i ngt.	* ... med ng.
<b>Working on</b> a project, John <b>works for</b> an IT firm.	* arbejde på ngt.	* ... for ng.
He <b>works to</b> develop a project from his <b>time of study</b> .	* ... på at -	* studietid
Having <b>paid</b> his <b>way</b> by making money { at the same time /	* betale for sig selv	
<b>besides</b> his studies / <b>side by side with</b> his studies, John	* ved siden af / sideløbende med ngt.	
had done <b>the bare minimum of</b> work in the way of studying	* kun et mindstemål af ngt.	
but still passed his exam; he got 60% - a <b>bare pass</b> .	* en kneben beståen	
A <b>snooty / snotty / snotty-nosed stuck-up so-and-so</b>	* storsnudet	* højryget
<b>10</b> encouraged him to apply for a post as <b>road sweeper</b> .	* gadefejter	* en eller anden, noksagt ubehagelig person
What a <b>barefaced cheek</b> !	* utilsløret frækhed / uforskammethed	
For a number of years the bank is profiting from	*	
a <b>flourishing / thriving</b> finance market.	* blomstrende	
The bank <b>pays</b> well and Liz is <b>paid</b> £ 1200 a month	* betale godt	* betale ng. ngt.
which is a nice <b>fat pay / wage packet</b> E//A	* fed løn ( lønningspose )	
quite a <b>huge paycheck</b> .	* = ( løncheque )	
So she <b>earns / makes</b> about £ 15 000 a year which is	* tjene ngt	
<b>not to be sneezed at</b> (E) / <b>nothing to sneeze at</b> (A).	* ikke noget at kimse af ( * nyse )	
As a <b>tax payer</b> in England, she <b>pays income / payroll tax</b>	* skatteyder	* indkomstskat
<b>20</b> by way of / in the way of ( a system called ) <b>PAYE</b>	* ~ kildeskat	
( pay as you earn ).	*	
In America an employer takes <b>withholding</b> tax out of	* kildeskat	
an employee's income and pays it directly to the government.	*	
The employees get a <b>payslip</b> E/A <b>pay stub</b> on which	* lønseddel	
they can check their <b>basic pay</b> E/A <b>base pay</b> ,	* grundløn	
their <b>overtime pay</b> , their <b>bonuses</b> , personal <b>increments</b> ,	* overtid - / overarbejdsbetaling	* tillæg
<b>extra pay</b> and how much has been taken away for tax, etc.	* ekstra betaling / tillæg	
and finally see what is left for <b>take-home pay</b> .	* nettoløn	
<b>Pay day</b> is two <b>working</b> days before the first of a month.	* lønningdag	* hverdag
<b>30</b> In some firms the employees receive a weekly or monthly	*	
<b>paycheque</b> E/A <b>paycheck</b> every two weeks.	* løncheque	
The <b>paymaster</b> <b>pays</b> the <b>wages</b> and <b>salaries</b> .	* lønudbetaler	* udbetale lønning
In some cases he hands out <b>pay / wage packets</b> .	* lønningspose / -kuvert	
The employees are given <b>holiday</b> E/A <b>vacation pay</b>	* feriepenge	
when they take their holiday / vacation, and get <b>sick pay</b>	* sygepenge	
if they are <b>away from work</b> because of illness.	* væk fra arbejde	
In E the government pays <b>sickness benefit</b>	* sygedagpenge	
until people <b>report fit</b> for <b>duty</b> .	* melde sig rask	
Women having a baby get <b>maternity pay</b> .	* barselsorlov	

**780** People who **pay** money **into** their **account**,  
**deposit** money **in** their **account** in the bank.

If a person wants to **cash** a **cheque**, the bank will

**pay** the **cheque** unless it's a **bad** / **dud** / **rubber cheque**:

a **RD cheque** ( a **cheque referred to drawer** )

Shares are **redeemable against** the **quoted price** /  
ri di-mêbl

**market value**, and can be **redeemed** at any of their branches.

The bank lends money to people who are considered able

to **pay** ( ) **`back** / **pay** ( ) **off** / **redeem** / **repay** the **loan**.

**10** People who need money may **apply for** a **loan** in the bank.

If a person wants to **take out** a **loan of** £ 500, the bank may

**grant** { the loan **to** the person / the person the loan.

The bank or a **credit rating agency** makes a judgement  
about how likely somebody is to pay back money that they

borrow and how safe it is to lend money to them.

People who are unable to buy a house or **pay for** something

**cash** **`down** E / E&A **cash up** **`front** /

**with** immediate **payment of cash** may **apply** for a **mortgage**  
( & house **`loan** ) in a bank or **at** a **credit institute**.  
`mâ-gidŝ

**20** If they are **granted** a **mortgage on** their house,  
they can **take out** a **mortgage**.

When a **building society** (E) lets people **mortgage** their  
property they have a right to sell the property if people don't

**pay** **`off** / **redeem** the **mortgage** over a certain period of time.

If the **`payback** is 30 years, it's a 30-year **payback**.

**Repayment** (U) of **debt** (U) usually includes **payment of**  
**accruing interest** (U) and as **mortgage rate** may rise or fall,  
the total **payback** will include some **accrued interest**.

The **mortgage payer** can make his **deposit** at any branch.  
di`pâsit

**30** If people can't **meet** the (re)**payments on** their **mortgage**  
they **fall behind on** their monthly **mortgage (re)payments**.

People who can't **borrow from** the **bank** / **get** a **bank loan**  
can go to a **pawnshop** and **pawn** a valuable article / object.

So they leave the object with the **pawnbroker**  
in exchange for money.

The object is returned to the owner if he **pays** ( ) **`back**  
the money within an agreed period of time.

If the owner isn't able to **redeem** the object **in pawn**,  
the pawnbroker can sell the article.

\* indbetale ( penge ) / \* ind på sin konto  
~ sætte ( penge ) ind

\* =

\* indløse en cheque

\* indløse ... \* dækningsløs \* gummicheque

\* ~ dækningsløs cheque

\* indløselig mod > \* kursværdi

\* = \* indløse ng.

\*

\* tilbagebetale / indfri > \* lån

\* søge om ...

\* tage et lån på ng.

\* bevilge ng. til ng. \* ... ng. ng.

\* kreditvurderingsinstitut

\*

\*

\* kontant

\* = \* mod kontant betaling

\* = \* ansøge om ng.

\* prioritetslån \* kreditforening

\* bevilge et prioritets lån i ng.

\* tage > \* ( prioritets- ) lån

\* = \* belåne /  
tage lån i ng.

\*

\* betale sig fri af ng.

\* tilbagebetalingstid

\* tilbagebetaling af > \* gæld \* betaling af >

\* påløben \* rente \* kreditlånsrentefod  
/ -sats

\* tilbagebetalingsbeløb \* påløben rente  
( påløbne renter )

\* lånindbetaler \* indbetaling

\* klare tilbagebetalingerne på > \* lån

\* komme bagud med > \* afdrag på lån

\* låne i banken \* få et banklån

\* pantelånerforretning \* pantsætte ng.

\* pantelåner

\*

\* betale ng. tilbage

\*

\* indløse ng. \* pantsat

\*

**781** Looking forward to **moving together**,  
the couple look for a **flat** eE/eA an **apartment**.

At the end of the autumn eE/eA fall, they find a suitable  
vacant flat where they can **move together**.

Having **wiped** their **feet** on the door mat,  
they look round the **bare rooms**.

Here and there **bare wires** are **sticking out** of the **cables**.

Looking at the **bare walls** and the **bare** wood(en) **floor**  
they each imagine a **furnished** room.

**10** The **bare** wood(en) **floorboards creak**, and need to  
be **planed**, perhaps **varnished** and covered with **carpets**.  
pleind  
They ask the landlord how much **rent** (U) they have to  
**pay for** the flat.

As it's a **fair rent**, Liz and John agree to **rent** the flat.

As they ask for an **undertaking to** rent the flat,  
the landlord gives them a written **undertaking that** it is a deal.

A **deposit of** two month's **rent** is **payable in advance**.  
di'pāsīt  
They **put** ( ) **down a deposit on** the flat.

They **pay** two month's rent **in advance as a deposit**.

**20** They **pay** (the) rent **to** the landlord once a month,  
and have to **pay** him the rent before the sixth of the month

Sometimes it **pays to decorate** and **redecorate**,  
and do some **craftsmanlike** work yourself.

Other times it would **pay** them **to** hire a craftsman.

Hiring a craftsman may **pay`dividend** in the end.

They agree to **pay** a craftsman **to undertake** the work.

He brings a floor **plane** and a **pot** of floor **varnish**.

There's a **bare possibility / chance** that the flat  
will be **renovated** and **redecorated** within two weeks.  
`renēveitid ri~dekēreitid

**30 Undertaking to set about** ( doing the job ) at once,  
a **master craftsman undertakes that**

he will **have finished with** / will **be finished with**  
the **renovation** and **re-decoration** by the end of the month.

They **pay** him in advance **for** the materials he has to buy.

They agree to **pay** him £ 800 **to** do the work,  
and **pay** him £ 200 **for** materials.

They don't **pay** the **master** the money they owe him  
until he and his **journeyman** have finished **redecorating** (vi).

They hope there will be no **incremental** costs.  
ingkrē`mentl

\* flytte sammen

\* lejlighed

\*

\* <<<

\* tørre >

\* fødderne

\* bart, tomt

\* rum

\* nøgen >

\* ledning  
/ metaltråd

\* stikke ud af >

\* ledning  
kabel

\* bar

\* væg

\* =

\* gulv

\* møbleret

\* bare

\* gulvbrædt

\* knirke

\* høvle ngt.

\* fernisere /  
lakere ngt.

\* ( gulv-) tæppe

\* ( hus-) leje

\* betale for ngt.

\* en rimelig husleje

\* leje ngt.

\* aftale / løfte om at -

\* =

\* depositum /  
indskud på ngt.

\* leje

\* at betale

\* på forskud  
forud

\* erlægge /  
( ud-) betale >

\* - = - for ngt.

\* betale ngt.

\* forud

\* som depositum

\* betale ngt. til ng.

\* ... ng. ngt.

\* det betaler sig at -

\* gøre pænt

\* atter ...

~ male, tapetsere etc.

\* håndværksmæssig

\* det betaler sig for ng. at -

\* betale sig

\* betale ng. for at -

\* påtage sig / tage sig at /  
gå i gang med ngt.

\* høvl

\* bølge

\* fernis  
lak

\* svag mulighed / chance

\* renovere / istandsætte ngt.

\* istandsætte ngt.  
( nymale etc. )

\* påtage sig / love at -

\* gå i gang ( med at - )

\* håndværksmester

\* ( være ) færdig med ngt.

\* renovering  
istandsættelse  
\* ... ng. for ngt.

\* =

\* ... ng. ngt. for at

\* ... ng. ngt. for / til ngt.

\* ... ng. ngt.

\* mester

\* håndværkssvend

\* istandsætte

\* tillægs-

**782** Ready to **move in**, the couple inspect their newly

`renovated and redecorated flat **gleaming with** fresh paint.

As the sun sets, they take a look out of a westward window.

Through the **bare branches** of snow-**laden** winter trees,  
they see the sun **sink(ing) below** the **horizon**.

The ground **is carpeted in / with newly fallen** snow.

A **carpet of** snow covers the streets; **carpeting** the streets  
the snow **crunches** under people's feet.

Preparing to **move into** their new flat, John wants to

**10** bring the whole lot of his old furniture, his old **ornaments /**  
**knick-knacks**, and other **decorative objects**.

Liz, however, finds much of it to be **bachelor-like junk**,  
worthless **rubbish** and useless **odds and `ends / E& `sods**  
which rightfully **belong in** (a) **landfill**,  
or **in the refuse / rubbish / waste dump**, the **rubbish tip**,  
the **waste ( disposal ) site** E/A the **garbage dump / tip**, \*\* !  
or, **at best**, in the **attick /eE loft** or **basement** or  
in a **storage room / storeroom** ( E: a **lumber / box room** ).

So she has to find excuses to get rid of various objects

**20** like a multicoloured carpet, without hurting his feelings.

' Your carpet is starting to **wear**, ' she maintains,  
even if it's only starting to **wear a little**, and she actually  
just doesn't like it's **`party-coloured** E/A parti-colored pattern.

Eventually, John **wearies of** her excuses.

He **waries of taking** her excuses **at face value**.

**Growing / being weary of** ( taking ) her excuses  
( seriously ), he tries to make her be honest by hinting,

' Your excuses are **wearing** (a little) **thin**, aren't they ? '

Eventually **wearing** him **`down**, her **persistence pays `off**.

**30** At the **carpet shop** they ask for **hard-wearing carpet** (U).

The shop has carpet **rolls**, loose carpets and rugs.

They look for an **oriental** sitting-room carpet.

They want **wall-to-wall carpeting** for the bedroom.

As they decide on a red **wall- to-`wall / E& fitted carpet**,  
the bedroom will be **carpeted** in red and **carpeted** throughout.

Underlining its **wearing** quality, the **carpet dealer**  
assures them, ' This carpet **wears well**.'

A **carpet fitter**, skilled to **lay a carpet**, will come  
and cut and fit the carpet for the bedroom.

\* flytte ind

\* skinne ( afdæmpet ) af ngt.

\*

\* nøgne grene

\* -belagt

\* synke ned bag horisonten

\* ~ dækket med et tæppe af >

\* nyfalden  
( sne )

\* tæppe / lag af ( sne )

\* ~ ligge som et tæppe over  
( gaderne )

\* ( sne ) knaser / knirker

\* flytte ind i ngt.

\* lille pyntegenstand

\* & tingeltangel

\* ~ pyntegenstand

\* ungkarle-

\* bras

\* bras

\* stumper og småstykker  
ting og rester, der er til overs

\* høre hjemme >

\* C: begravet losseplade  
U: opfyldningsaffald

\* på lossepladsen

\* =

\* affalds- \* ( bortskaffelses- ) plads

\*\* se side 800

\* i bedste fald

\* loft ( rum )

\* kælder

\* opbevarings- / lagerrum  
pulterkammer/ -rum

\* pulterkammer / -rum

\*

\* blive slidt

\* ... lidt ...

\* spraglet

\* blive træt af ngt.

\* ... af at -

\* tage ngt. for pålydende

\* blive / være træt af ( at gøre ) ngt.

\*

\* blive ( lidt ) tynd ( -slidt )

\* nedbryde, udmatte  
gøre ng. mør

\* vedholden-  
hed

\* betale / lønne sig  
give bonus

\* tæppeforretning

\* slidstærkt

\* tæppemateriale

\* ( tæppe- ) rulle

\* orientalsk ( tæppe )

\* væg-til-væg

\* tæppebelægning

\*

\* tæppebelagt

\* slid

\* tæppehandler

\* være slidstærk / holdbar ( overfor slid )  
tåle slid

\* tæppelægger

\* lægge et ...

\*

**783** As the price is **payable by / in** monthly **instal(l)ments**,  
in`stã~lmênts  
 the couple **find** themselves **able to pay** the **cost of** a car.

As they are able to **meet** the **payments on** a car,  
 they are able to **meet / bear** the **cost** ( of a car )

They agree on **payment in instalments**  
 with a **down`payment / an initial payment of** £ 1000.

They **pay for** the car **by / in** monthly **instalments**.  
 They **pay** ( ) `down £ 1000 **with** the **stipulation that**  
 the **balance** be **paid by / in instalments of** £ 500,  
 which **includes paying interest on** the loan.

**10** There will be a **penalty for late payment(s)** of bills.

They **make** their monthly **payments** in a bank.  
 They have to **pay** ( ) `out £ 200 to get their car insured.  
 As **the proud owners** of a car they go for a ride into  
 the countryside.

The music **swells** as they turn up the car radio.  
 Once in a while there's a **swell / crescendo in** the music.  
kre`\$endêu  
 The news is about an **armed** bank **robbery**.

The forest floor is covered by a **carpet** of flowers.

It's is **carpeted with anemones** and **fallen** leaves.  
ê nemêniz

**20** They **unfold / spread** their blanket on a **carpet of** grass.

As it's getting chilly, they put on their **outdoor things**.

John puts on a **windcheater** E/eA **windbreaker**  
 while Liz puts on a woollen sweater looking **itchy**.

It looks like an **itchy / prickly / scratchy** sweater.

' It doesn't **itch / prickle** ( me ), ' Liz assures.

For a while they enjoy the spring scenery until both of them  
 have a **prickly** sensation on their legs: the skin feels **prickly**.

Their legs **prickling** and **itching**, they **hurry to**  
 { **get up / stand up / rise** ( to their feet ) / **get on** their feet.

They realize that they have been sitting close to an **antshill**.

**30** Feeling **prickly / itchy** on their legs coming out in a **rash**,  
 they start **rubbing** the **prickly** and **itchy** skin with their nails.

They **have** ( got ) an **itch** all over the lower parts  
 of their legs that makes them **scratch** their legs.

The ant bites have brought them out in an **itchy** rash.

The skin and the rash **prickle** and **itch** for quite a while.

Driving back to town, they soon notice a **swell** in the noise.

The traffic noise **swells** around them.

\* betalbar / forfalden i ng. \* afdrag / rate  
 \* finde sig i stand til at - \* betale udgiften til ng.  
 \* klare betalingerne på / til ng  
 \* klare udgiften ( til ng. )  
 \* betaling i ... ( afbetaling / ratebetaling )  
 \* ~ udbetaling / første afdrag på ng.  
 \* betale for ng. \* i ... afdrag / rater  
 \* udbetale ng. \* bestemmelse  
restbeløb \* betale med / i > \* afdrag / rate  
inkludere at - \* betale > \* rente (-r ) på ( lån )  
 \* straf \* ( for ) sen \* betaling (-er )  
 \* foretage sine betalinger  
 \* punge ud med ng.  
 \* stolt ejer  
 \*  
 \* stige i styrke  
 \* styrkestigning  
 \* væbnet > \* røveri  
 \* tæppe af ng.  
 \* dækket af ng. \* anemone \* nedfalden  
 \* brede ( ng. foldet ) ud \* tæppe af ng.  
 \* ~ overtøj  
 \* vindjakke  
 \* kradsende  
 \* =  
 \* ~ kradse, stikke ( ng. )  
 \*  
 \* prikkende, stikkende \* =  
 \* prikke \* klø \* skynde sig at -  
 \* komme op at / og stå \* =  
 \* myretue  
 \* ( føle sig ) kløende \* udslæt  
 ( føle en kløen )  
 \* gnide ng. \* kløende  
 \* få kløen  
 \* klø ng.  
 \* kløende  
 \* prikke \* klø  
 \* forøgelse / stigning ( i støj )  
 \* øges, stige

**784** After some years of profitable investment in building activities and home loans, the **housing / property market** suddenly comes to a **`standstill**.

As many **builders**, especially **speculative builders** and **property speculators / sharks**, can't sell their houses, they can't **keep up with** their **loan repayments** or pay the **construction firms**, the **property developing companies**, or ( **firms of** ) **building contractors**.

So many builders, firms and companies go bankrupt, and as **10** buildings, houses and homes can't be sold at a price that covers the mortgage, many banks **plunge into** an **abyss of** economic ruin as they have to take over property at a loss.

As trade **goes downhill** and the finance **bubble bursts** / **A& busts**, the economy of many countries is in deep recession.

As many employees lose their jobs there's a **swell in** the **number** / the **ranks** of **unemployed**.

The finance crisis creates a **liquidity crisis** for the bank where Liz works.

**Intoxicated** and **blinded by / with** success and optimism, **20** the bank manager has been too **rash to** grant loans.

The bank's economy is **on a / the slippery `slope** (E) as its liquidity **is on the brink / edge / verge of collapse**.

As the bank is **on the verge of going bankrupt / bust**, it is / stands **on the edge of a `precipice** / an **abyss**.

As the manager's reckless lending has **brought / taken** the bank **to the brink of** bankruptcy, he is called to a meeting with the board **for a carpeting**.

He is **carpeted** (eE) / reprimanded **for** having **mortgaged** the future.  
**30** He **is / gets called on the carpet** (eA) by the board **for** having **mortgaged** the bank's and the employees' future.

At the time of his appointment the manager had, however, been able to negotiate **lucrative** conditions of appointment, so the board has to **pay him `off** with a **golden handshake**.

So he receives a large amount of money as a **`payoff**.

Only due to a **bank package**, passed by the government, the bank is **pulled back from the brink** ( of bankruptcy ).

Liz and her colleagues keep her jobs as a larger bank **gobbles** ( ) **`up** the bank as a commercial **undertaking**.

- \*
- \* boligmarked
- \* stilstand
- \* bygherre ( person / firma )      \* byggespekulant
- \* =
- \* holde trit med ngt.      \* tilbagebetaling på lån
- \* byggefirma      \* entreprenørfirma
- \* entreprenør (-firma)
- \*
- \* falde i en afgrund af ngt.
- \*
- \* gå nedadbakke      \* ( finans-) bobbel      \* briste
- \* =
- \* vækst i ( et antal / en mængde )
- \* antallet / rækken af arbejdsløse
- \* likviditetskrise
- \*
- \* beruset af ngt.      \* forblændet af ngt.
- \* overilet / uforsigtig med at
- \* ~ på vej mod afgrunden ( \* glat / fedtet      \* skråning )  
/ ned ad skråplanet
- \* være på randen af ngt.      \* kollaps  
sammenbrud
- \* ... af at -      \* ~ gå fallit / konkurs
- \* på afgrundens rand      ( afgrund / dybt hul )
- \* bringe / føre ng. >
- \* til randen af ngt.
- \* til >      \* ( skide-) balle
- \* få en ( skide-) balle for ngt.
- \* sætte ngt. på spil
- \* <<
- \* pantsætte ngt.
- \*
- \* lukrativ  
givtig
- \* betale og afskedige ng.      \* gyldent >      \* håndtryk
- \* aftrædelsesgodtgørelse
- \* bankpakke
- \* bringe ng&t. væk fra afgrundens rand /  
ud af farezonen ( væk fra faren for ngt. )
- \*
- \* opsluge ngt.      \* projekt, ( risiko-) foretagende

**785** The company where John works **has** about 50 people **on the payroll**.

A few years ago, the **board of directors gambled on** ( appointing ) a new **managing director**.

One of the directors knew they were **taking a gamble** ( **on** the new director ) but decided it was worth it.

He **gambled that** the new director **had** the **creative itch**.

**It was** a **gamble**, too, for the new director ( **to come into power** ) but he **had** an **itch** to prove his skills.

**10 Itching for recognition and acclaim**, the new director had been **itching to** make the company leading in software.

Soon after, the company **hit / struck paydirt**.

The **gamble** ( **on** the director and the new software ) apparently **paid`off** as the creative **itch** of the new director seemed to **do / work wonders**.

The enterprise seemed to be a success.

**Good will** is an **invisible asset to a business**.

The managing director and the business were **doing well**, so for a couple of years, **things** were **going well with** **20** both the business and the managing director.

The employees **earned a good wage / salary**.

As they **earned** good **wages / salaries**, John **earned good money**.

On top of his **basic E/A base salary**, there were numerous **fringe benefits** ( norm. pl. )

He was **on a monthly salary of** £1,500 so his **yearly / annual salary** was £ 18,000.

The employees got / received a **bonus payment** ( of £ x ) **in acknowledgement of their efforts / performance**.

**30** The directors popularity **swelled**.

No wonder there was a **swell** in his popularity.

The employees **were paid well**, and **earned well**, and the director must have **earned** an **absolute fortune**.

His **personal fortune** must have **swelled / swollen**.

**High earners**, people **with high salaries** sometimes **get into / acquire / develop expensive habits**.

Important **business connections** and **trading partners** received a gift **in payment for** their great cooperation.

\* have ng. >

\* på lønningslisten

\* bestyrelse

\* satse på ( at ) ng&t.

\* administrerende direktør

\* tage en chance / løbe in risiko

\* ( med ng&t. )

\* satse på at \* have > \* kreativ \* stærk trang / lyst ( = skabertrangen )

\* chancespil satsning \* komme til >

\* magt \* have > \* en brændende trang / lyst til at -

\* brænde efter ng&t. \* anerkendelse \* & ros

\* ... at -

\* ramme en guldåre

\* chancespil ( på ng&t. )

\* betale sig

\* brændende trang / lyst

\* lave / skabe mirakler

\*

\* god > \* vilje \* usynlig \* værdi for > \* foretagende

\* ng. klare sig / ng&t. gå godt

\* det går godt for ng&t.

\*

\* tjene en god ( dag- / uge-) løn

\* ( måneds-) løn

\*

\* tjene gode penge

\* grund- ( måneds-) løn

\* frynsegoder

\* ~ have en månedsløn på ng&t.

\* årsløn

\* bonus udbetaling

\* på x pund

\* i erkendelse at / som anerkendelse for ng&t.

\* arbejdsindsats

\* =

\* stige

\* vokse

\* stigning

\* vækst

\* aflønne / betale ng. godt

\* tjene godt

\* tjene >

\* ~ enorm

\* formue

\* personlig formue

\* svulme

\* højt betalt lønmodtager

\* med høj løn / lønning

\* få / tillægge sig / udvikle >

\* dyre vaner

\* forretningsforbindelse

\* handelspartner

\* til gengæld / belønning for ng&t.

<b>786</b> As the company's income <b>amply</b> exceeded its <b>payroll</b>	* rigelig	* lønudgift
and other expenses, the employees <b>made</b> a 20 % <b>pay claim</b> .	* fremsætte / komme med et >	* x lønkrav
<b>At first making</b> a 10 % <b>pay offer</b> , the management	* ~ ( aller-) først i første omgang	* x løntilbud
<b>offered</b> a 10 % <b>pay increase the first time / to begin with</b> ,	* tilbyde > * x lønstigning	* ~ i første omgang
but eventually agreed on a 15 % <b>pay rise</b> E/A <b>raise</b> .	* x lønforhøjelse	
The business seems to be <b>flourishing / thriving</b> .	* blomstre / trives	
Some employees are able to <b>do</b> E/A <b>make</b> a <b>deal with</b>	* lave en aftale med ng. >	
the management <b>on</b> a <b>wage contract</b> .	* om ng.	* lønkontrakt
The company wins a prize for it's fast growing economy.	*	
<b>10</b> The company's success is seen as a <b>payback</b> for all	* gengæld belønning	
the hard work the managing director and the employees	*	
have done.	*	
In order to <b>pay tribute</b> to the prize winners,	* udtrykke hyldest / ros til ng. ( hylde / rose ng. )	
and <b>give</b> them <b>the red carpet treatment</b> ,	* ~ give ng. en fornem behandling	
the prize committee hires a congress hall.	*	
So the evening the prize is going to be presented,	* overrække ng.	
the organizers have <b>rolled out the red carpet</b> .	* rulle den røde løber ud ~ give ng. en fornem behandling	
<b>The red carpet</b> is a strip of red carpet that has been laid on	* den røde løber	
the ground for important visitors to walk on when they arrive.	*	
<b>20</b> To everybody's surprise, the managing director, however,	*	
doesn't show up, so as the rather confused personal manager	*	
has <b>got into</b> a <b>situation where</b> she has to decide immediately,	* kommet i en situation hvor -	
she <b>announces</b> the unexpected situation <b>to</b> the audience.	* bekendtgøre ng. til ng. !! ej announce sb. sth. !!	
She <b>announces that</b> the director has just called, and said	* ... at -	
that he couldn't <b>make it home from</b> an urgent <b>business trip</b> .	* ~ komme / nå hjem fra >	* forretningsrejse
Everybody wonders, and some have their suspicions.	*	
Has the director <b>got / had cold feet</b> ?	* få kolde fødder	
Instead, the personal manager is <b>presented with</b> the prize.	* ~ ( blive ) overrakt ( hæderspris )	
but the celebration, <b>no wonder</b> , takes place in an atmosphere	* ikke underligt	
<b>30</b> of surprise, wonder and worry.	*	
Already the next day, the alarming news is in the press.	*	
Some channels have <b>wall-to-wall</b> news <b>coverage</b> .	* altdækkende	* ( nyheds-) dækning
The managing director has <b>turned himself in to</b> the <b>police</b> ,	* melde sig til politiet	
and confessed to massive swindling.	*	
Especially those <b>involved in / with</b> the IT firm	* have noget at gøre med / være interesseret i ng.	
are <b>gobsmacked</b> (E) when they hear the news.	* lamslæt	
Detectives dealing with <b>economic and financial crimes</b>	* økonomisk kriminalitet	
<b>undertake</b> a full investigation into the swindle.	* påtage sig / gå i gang med ng.	

**787** A business will experience **peaks** and **troughs**.

tråfs  
After a few years of growing demand for software,

the demand had suddenly started to decline.

So as **things** were **going badly with** the company,  
things were **going badly with** the director.

The **gamble on** the **IT bubble** didn't **pay off**.

As the **undertaking was a failure** / didn't **succeed**,  
and the company was **in low water** / **a bad way**,

the director had **gone wrong** / **to the bad** in the vain hope

**10** that the company would manage to **weather** the recession  
and he would be able to **ride (out)** / **weather** the **storm**.

He confesses to having **misappropriated trust funds**,  
-ê`prêu -  
and **fiddled** the **accounts** / the **books** / the **lists** / the **figures**

so that none of the employees have had any idea that due to  
the financial crisis, the market for their products have **dried up**.

How **could** the director **possibly succeed** for so long,  
and **succeed with** his **sly creativity** for such a long time?  
kri-ei` tiviti

Despite his creative itch, it **couldn't possibly succeed**.

**It wouldn't work**, it was **bound to end in disaster**.

**20** It **couldn't go on like this**; it **would end in disaster**.

Having confessed to having **cooked** / **fiddled** the **books**,  
that is having **manipulated** the accounts **fraudently**,  
he furthermore confesses to having **bribed** a bank manager.

The bank manager had acquired a taste for **high living** /  
( the ) **high life** and worked up a huge **private consumption**  
which had soon **gobbled ( ) up** all of his salary.

**Bribing** the bank manager **with cash under** the **counter**,  
the IT director had **bribed** him **into** granting / **to grant**  
large loans **to** the IT company in the vain hope that the crisis  
**30** would soon be over so he and the company could  
**step back from** the **edge of** an **abyss**.

Being **easy pray** for bribery, the bank manager had  
granted the IT company large loans to **cover up** its crisis.

In the **pay of** the IT director, the bank manager  
had granted new loans to cover the IT company's deficits.

The IT director had **paid ( ) off** the bank manager.

As his **paymaster** the IT director had given  
the bank manager **payoffs** ( eA **payola** ) to make him  
keep quiet about the company's bad situation.

\* top \* trug ~ lavpunkt  
~ op og nedgange

\*

\*

\* det gå skidt for ngt.

\* ... for ng.

\* chancespil på > \* IT-boblen \* ~ betale sig  
give gevinst

\* foretagende \* var en fiasko / ikke lykkedes  
opgave, projekt

\* i en dårlig forfatning \* på usikker grund  
( det går dårligt for ngt. )

\* komme på afveje

\* komme helskindet gennem ngt.

\* ride stormen af

\* misbruge betroede midler

\* ~ fuske med > \* ~ regnskaberne

\*

\* tørre ud

\* kunne på nogen mulig måde have heldet med sig  
/ gå godt for ng.

\* lykkes / have held med ngt. \* snedig \* kreativitet  
lusket skabertrang

\* det kan ( kunne ) umuligt gå godt

\* det kan ikke gå godt \* det må ende galt / i katastrofe

\* det kan ikke fortsætte på denne måde \* =

\* fuske med regnskaberne

\* manipulere / fuske med ngt. \* i bedragerisk øjemed

\* bestikke ng.

\* det søde liv

\* = \* privatforbrug

\* æde ngt. op

\* bestikke ng. med ngt. \* penge under bordet

\* bestikke ng. til at -

\*

\*

\* komme væk fra afgrundens rand

\* let bytte

\* dække over

\* i ngs. sold

\*

\* bestikke ng.

\* den, der udbetaler bestikkelse

\* bestikkelsespenge

\*

**788** For some time the **cover-up** had **gone off** very **well**.

It had **gone fine / well / smoothly / without a hitch**.

An anonymous person had, however, blackmailed

the IT director by threatening to leak information to the press.

Some person apparently wanted to **pay** the director **back**  
( **for** whatever might have made the person suffer ).

**Under** great **strain**, certain / sure that the truth would soon  
**leak out**, the director was (all) **hot and bothered**;

**things** / the **place** was **getting too hot** ( **for** him ).

**10** So being ill / **in a bad way**, he was **itching to be / get off**.

The police have no reason to doubt the **essentials of**  
his story.

Having apparently **scaled** the **heights of** his **profession**,  
the IT director is now accused of **professional misconduct**,  
**bribery and corruption**, and **remanded (E) in custody**.

Having **misappropriated** trust funds and **appropriated lots**  
**/A& gobs** of money, the director and the bank manager are  
accused of **misappropriation** ( **of** trusts funds ), of **voucher**  
**fiddling** and of having **offered, given** and **taken bribes**.

**20** Even if he denies ever to have **accepted** a **bribe**,  
every aspect of the bank manager's private life is **laid bare**.

He had **gambled at cards** and **on** the **horses**.

As he had **worked up** an irresistible **desire** to **hump**,  
he had spent a fortune on women **for / with** the **purpose of**  
**humping** them.

All the **rest of** the staff are really **upset with** the manager.

They are **upset at / by** his **speculation in** shares,  
and feel **upset /A& queasy about** his excessive private life.

So they can't help **gloating over** the managers arrest.

**30** 'It's **payback time**,' the **staff representative** **snarls**,  
**swelling with** anger and disappointment.

Trusting the manager has been an **abysmal** failure.  
ê`bizmêl

There's a growing **swell of** feelings in the public against  
**speculation** and **gambling on** the **housing market**,  
on the **financial market**, and the **stock market**.

Some political parties demand an **undertaking to**  
introduce more control of financial transactions.

The government **gives** an **undertaking that** it will take steps  
to control the markets in order to avoid a **collapse / crash**.

\* tilsøring

dækken over

\* gå / forløbe { fint / glat / uden forhindring (-er) }

\*

\*

\* ~ gøre gengæld overfor ng. ( > )

\* ( for ngt.)

\* under ( stort ) pres

\* sive ud

\* være i en presset situation

\* det / situationen bliver uudholdelig ( for ng.)  
jorden brænder under ngs. fødder

\* have det dårligt \* brænde efter at komme ud af det  
/ skidt

\* essensen af ngt.

\*

\* bestaget > \* højderne af > \* ( sin ) profession  
~ nået til toppen af >

\* embedsmisbrug

\* bestikkelse

\* sende ng. i varetægtsfængsel

\* tilegne sig ngt. på uhæderlig vis

\* =

\* store mængder af ngt.

underslæb

\* fifleri

\* tilbyde / give / modtage > \* bestikkelse

fuskeri

\* modtage >

\* =

\* blotlægge ngt.

\* spille hasard

\* i kortspil

\* på heste

\* oparbejde >

\* trang til at -

\* bolle

\* med det formål at -

\* bolle ng.

\* & det øvrige

\* oprørt / vred på ng.

\* ... over ngt.

\* forarget over ngt.

\* fryde sig / hovre over

\* ~ tid til at få  
betalt tilbage

\* personale- \* representant \* snerre

\* fyldt op af ngt.

\* afgrundsdyb

\* vækst af ngt.

\* spekulation

\* spille hasard på

\* boligmarked

\* finansmarked

\* aktiemarked

\* løfte / tilsagn / tiltag om at -

\*

\* ... løfte om at -

\* sammenbrud

**789** Now **wondering at** their lack of suspicion, people  
**wonder** ( that ) they had **paid no attention to** scepticism,  
 and **paid no attention to** the sceptics.

People realize that some reports **repay** careful reading,  
 but just a few sceptics had **dissented from** the official view.  
 If people had only **heeded** their warnings, none of this  
 would have **gone so badly**.

People had, however, **paid / given no heed to dissenters**,  
 so having **paid / given no heed to** their **dissent** (U),  
**10** people didn't **heed** the dissenter's advice and objections.

People had **disregarded** and **ignored** all warnings.  
 As they **took no heed of** the **dissenting voices**,  
 and **took no heed of** their **dissenting voices**,  
 they **took no heed of** the daring transactions,  
 and **took no heed of** the **fiddlers**, **heedless** of the danger.

They **paid / gave no heed** at the time, but later  
 they painfully realized that there **was cause for** alarm  
 as he had **been on** the **fiddle** for quite some time.

Both the employees in the bank and the former employees  
**20** in the IT company come to think of episodes which could  
 have been early warnings that **repaid** attention.

Both the bank manager and the IT director have  
**gambled on** ( profiting from ) a lucrative market.

Having **speculated on** the **stock exchange / market**,  
 they have **speculated in** stocks and shares.

Shares should be bought when **prices** are **at rock bottom**.

**Gambling** everything **on** a rising demand and rising prices,  
 and **fiddling** information about their **undertakings**, the fiddlers  
 have not only **gambled** their reputation **on** shady deals

**30** but all together **gambled with** the employee's future  
 when billions of pounds had been **wiped off** share prices.

The fiddlers' **falsehood**, and practice of telling a **falsehood**  
 / a lie, their **turning** right and wrong, truth and **falsehood**  
**upside down**, their ( false ) idealization, and their attempts to  
**save appearances** have developed into a **tissue / web of**  
**lies** and **falsehoods with** tragic **consequences**.

Evebody either they are **involved in** or **with** the fiddling  
 or **involved in** or **with** it's **consequences** must or will  
**face, take** or **suffer** the **consequences of** the swindle.

- \* undre sig over ngt.
- \* undre sig over at -                      \* ikke lægge mærke til /  
være opmærksom på ngt.
- \* ... ngt.
- \* fortjene ( læsning )
- \* være uenig i ngt.
- \* være opmærksom på ngt.
- \* gå så galt
- \* ikke ofre særlig                      \* person m. afvigende holdning  
opmærksomhed på ngt.
- \* =    \* afvigende holdning
- \* ænse / være særlig opmærksom på ngt.
- \* se bort fra ngt.                      \* & ignorere ( advarsel )
- \* tage ordentlig notits af ngt.\* afvigende / kritiske røster  
( personer )
- \* =    \* ... stemmer
- \* & tage sig i agt for ngt.
- \* =                      \* fusker                      \* uopmærksom på ngt.  
svindler
- \* være særlig opmærksom
- \* være grund til ( alarm, bekymring )
- \* være moralsk på afveje
- \*
- \*
- \* fortjene ( opmærksomhed )
- \*
- \* satse på ( at gøre ) ngt.
- \* spekulere ( økonomisk ) på ngt.                      \* aktiebørs  
/ -marked
- \* spekulere i ngt. / på ngt.
- \* pris, ~ kurs    \* ~ i bund
- \* satse ngt. på ngt.
- \* fuske med ngt.    \* aftale, løfte  
forehavende
- \* sætte ngt. på spil på ngt.
- \* spille hasard med ngt.  
sætte ngt. på spil
- \* ( være ) strøget af ( aktiepris / -kurs )
- \* løgnagtighed    \* løgn  
usandhed
- \* vende ngt. >    \* =
- \* ~ på hovedet ( ~ vende op og ned på ngt. )
- \* redde skinnet    \* net af >
- \* løgn    \* løgnagtighed                      \* med >                      \* konsekvens  
følge
- \* indblandet i ngt.    \* & optaget af ngt.
- \* - - - >    \* konsekvens / følgevirkning
- \* se ... i øjnene / tage ... / mærke ...                      \* konsekvens /  
følge af ngt.



<b>791</b> The many <b>lay-offs – dismissals</b> and <b>discharges</b> due to the recession – <b>swell</b> the <b>ranks / numbers</b> of <b>unemployed</b> .	* afskedigelse ( af mangel på arbejde ) * få ngt. til at vokse	* afskedigelse * række / antal af ngt.	* = * arbejdsløs
As the ranks / numbers of unemployed <b>swell</b> ,	* vokse		
the <b>employment service</b> and <b>job placement service</b>	* arbejdsformidling		* =
at the <b>job centres</b> and <b>employment agencies / exchanges</b>	* & -s-kontor		* =
are usually only able to <b>pay / give</b> <b>lip service</b> to	* yde / give >	* ~ mundtlig støtte / hjælpe til >	
<b>the unemployed / unwaged</b> and their wishes to get a job.	* arbejdsløse		
Labour market reforms need being / to be passed.	*		
By <b>collective</b> <b>bargaining</b> , the <b>trade(s)</b> E/A <b>labor unions</b> , kê lektiv	* kollektiv(e) forhandling(er)		* fagforening
<b>10</b> and the <b>employer's associations</b> and <b>organisations</b>	* arbejdsgiverorganisation		
negotiate <b>terms</b> and <b>conditions</b> ( of employment ).	* ( løn-) betingelser og arbejdsvilkår		
Trying to <b>strike / make a bargain</b> , the <b>two sides</b> of <b>industry</b>	* nå til / lave en forhandlingsaftale	* arbejdsmarkedets parter	
<b>bargain over wage fixing / pay determination /</b>	* lønfastsættelse		
the <b>fixing</b> of the <b>wages</b> and <b>working conditions</b> .	* =		* arbejdsforhold
At <b>wage / pay / salary</b> { <b>negotiations / talks</b> , they try to	* ~ lønforhandlinger		
<b>reach a wage agreement</b> , and <b>reach a wage settlement</b> .	* ~ nå til en lønaftale		* - - - lønforlig
They try to <b>strike</b> a fair <b>pay deal</b> in order to	* =		
<b>fix</b> a / the { <b>level / rate of pay, wage(s)</b> and <b>salary</b> .	* fastsætte / fastfryse >	* niveau <=>	* løn-
If the sides <b>reach</b> an <b>agreement / accommodation</b> about	* nå til en aftale om ngt.		
<b>20</b> <b>pay</b> and <b>conditions</b> , they <b>have</b> a <b>collective agreement /</b>	* løn- og arbejdsforhold	* have en kollektiv aftale >	
<b>accommodation</b> to <b>regulate</b> the labour market.	* ... om at >		* regulere ng.
If the sides in an <b>industrial</b> E/A a <b>labor dispute</b> fail to dis'pju-t / 'dis -	* arbejdsmarkedsstrid		
<b>reach agreement / accommodation</b> , the <b>deal falls through</b> .	* nå til enighed	* aftalen falder til jorden / gå i vasken	
So both sides <b>gird</b> ( themselves ) <b>for</b> an <b>industrial</b> <b>conflict</b> .	* berede ( sig på ) ngt.		
The unions fight for decent <b>pay levels / rates</b> ,	* lønniveau		
<b>wage levels / rates</b> , and <b>salary levels / rates</b> ,	* ( uge-) ...		* ( måneds-) ...
and regulations to protect <b>wage earners</b> and <b>salary earners</b> .	* lønmodtager ( ugelønsmodtager )		* ( måneds-) ...
both <b>waged workers</b> and <b>salaried officials</b> .	* lønarbejder	* ( måneds-) lønnet	* embedsmand funktionær
The unions work to promote the interests of	*		
<b>30</b> the <b>waged workers</b> as well as the <b>unwaged</b> (E) workers,	* arbejdsløs		
not only <b>to</b> the <b>advantage</b> of today's employees but also <b>to</b>	* til ngs. fordel til fordel for ng.		* >
the <b>benefit of subsequent</b> generations in <b>subsequent</b> years.	* =	* efterfølgende	* =
<b>Grouping together</b> the unions work to protect and safe>	* forene sig i grupper		
guard the interests of both <b>the waged</b> and <b>the unwaged</b> (E,E).	* dem I arbejde		* dem uden ... de arbejdsløse
Some activists in the trade-union movement are	*		
<b>unpaid / unwaged</b> volunteers who do <b>unpaid / unwaged</b> work	* ulønnet		* =
especially <b>of benefit to low earners</b> , i.e. people with	* lavtlønsmodtager		
<b>low wages</b> and <b>low salaries</b> who are <b>badly / poorly paid</b> .	* lav ( uge-) løn	* ... ( måneds-) løn	* dårligt lønnet
Some people consider the poor to be the <b>dregs of society</b> .	* ( samfundets ) bundfald		

**792** Lis is just an **average earner** and the only **wage earner**,  
so John and Liz **are hard`up**.

As she's the only one **in paid employment**,  
they are **strapped ( for cash )**.

So they have to struggle **make ( both ) ends`meet**.

They worry about **unpaid** rent, debts and bills.

If you **fall on** your **arse**, you **are on** your **arse**.

In order to be **waged** (adj.) as soon as possible,  
John looks for any **waged** work even an **ill-paid** job.

**10** In order to make enough money for the bare essentials,  
John takes a temporary **badly / poorly paid** part-time job  
as **caretaker** E/eA **janitor**.

Having been busy with a number of jobs for years,  
the previous caretaker was starting to **get itchy**.

The **hours wore on** as he finished his chores.

So as he **got / had itchy feet**, he **struck camp** //  
he **uped`sticks** E/A **pulled up stakes**,  
and **set out on / went on** a long **journey**.

The job as caretaker alone doesn't **pay** a **living wage**.

**20** Sweeping the street, John comes to think of the words of  
his **snooty / snotty / snotty-nosed** fellow student  
-`-`-

who **propheesied**, 'You'll end up as a street sweeper. '  
`prâfêsaid

Determined to **bite back**, **bite back at** the **stuck-up**  
**so-and-so**, and **bite back at** his insult, he remembers  
that he wanted to answer back but **forbore from** doing so.

Having **bitten ( ) back** the **retort** that **sprang to** his **lips**,  
he had thus **forborne** to **make** a **sharp retort**.

**Inferiority feeling** due to his working-class background,  
infiêri`ârêti  
and the **inferiority complex** he had **about** his background

**30** had then made him **forbear from** a **sharp retort**.

He had **swallowed** the insult and **bitten ( ) back** his anger.

Apart from all that, he **has** an **itch to** get a **salaried** IT job  
as soon as possible which is **nothing to be wondered at**.

The **hours** easily **wear on** if you got a boring job,  
so ( **it's** ) **little / small / no wonder that** he's **itching to**  
get back to do some IT work.

So all the time he's looking`out for / on the`lookout for  
better **paid full-time employment**.

\* gennemsnitslønmodtager

\* forsørger

\* sidde hårdt i det

\* i lønnet ansættelse

\* være i pengetrang

\* få økonomien til at hænge sammen  
/ det til at løbe rundt  
\* ubetalt

\* gå på røven

\* være ...

\* være lønnet

\* lønnet

\* dårligt betalt

\*

\* dårligt betalt

\* vicevært

\*

\* blive rastløs

\* timerne, ~ tiden >

\* slæbe sig af sted

\* blive / være rastløs

\* ~ rykke teltpælene op

\* =

\* tage ud på en ... rejse

\* give en løn til at leve af

\*

\* storsnudet, højrovet, snobbet

\* forudsige

\* give igen \* ... mod ng.

\* storsnudet  
højrovet, snobbet

\* ... ngt.

\* afholde sig fra / lade være med / undlade at -

\* bide ngt. i sig \* gensvar \* springe ng. i munden

\* <<

\* komme med et skarpt gensvar

\* mindreværdsfølelse

\* -kompleks over ngt.

\* afholde sig fra / lade være med  
/ undlade ngt.

\* skarpt gensvar

\* bide ngt. i sig

\* have et brændende ønske om at -

\* ikke kunne undre nogen

\* timerne, ~ tiden

\* slæbe sig af sted

\* det kan ikke undre nogen at -  
intet under at -

\* brænde efter at -

\*

\*

\* bedre betalt

\* fuldtidsarbejde  
( -stilling )

<b>793</b> As a Christmas present from Liz parents, Liz and John	*
get a <b>gift voucher</b> / a <b>gift certificate</b> / E& a <b>gift token</b> //	* gavekort
\vaut\$ê	
a <b>gift card</b> exchangeable at a restaurant.	* gave(plastik)kort
They ask for the <b>menu</b> to see what's <b>on the menu</b> . * !	* menu- / spisekort * på menuen * se side 800 !
\menju~	
A menu is written without any <b>redundancy</b> / <ce	* overflødighed ( overfødige ord )
that is without any <b>redundant</b> information.	* overflødig
First come the <b>dishes</b> served as the first <b>course</b> ,	* ( mad-) ret * ret ( menuafdeling )
then, on two <b>subsequent</b> pages, come the dishes served as	* efterfølgende
the main course, then a selection of cheese(s) and finally	*
<b>10</b> on a <b>subsequent</b> page the desserts / E& sweets.	* efterfølgende
As the first course there are salads, soup(s), <b>patties</b> etc.	* stegt / bagt småret
Some fish soup(s), <b>broth(s)</b> and <b>omelettes</b> (A: omelets )	* kødsuppe * omelet ( æggekage )
are <b>substantial</b> enough to <b>serve as a main dish</b> .	* fyldig * servere / tjene som * hovedret
<b>Fish balls</b> and <b>fish cakes</b> are made of (a) <b>cream of fish</b> ,	solid * fiskebolle * fiskefrikadelle * ~ fiskefars
<b>Meat balls</b> are made of <b>minced</b> meat, perhaps <b>minced up</b>	* kødbolle * ( fint- / maskin) hakket ( kød ) * =
with onions etc. and <b>bound ( together ) with</b> flour and egg.	* binde ngt. sammen ( + + ~ fars )
<b>Mince</b> (E) is usual made of beef that has been finely	* hakket ( okse-) kød
cut / chopped by a <b>mincer</b> (E).	* kødhakker
<b>Ground beef</b> or <b>hamburger</b> ( meat ) (A) is made of beef	* hakket oksekød
<b>20</b> that is <b>grounded</b> by a <b>meat grinder</b> (A).	* hakket * kødhakker
(A) <b>pâté</b> (&C) is a <b>paste</b> , a soft cooked mixture of very finely	* pâté * pasta
\patei E/A pã~/ pa'tei	postej blød masse
chopped meat, fish etc. used for spreading on bread, or served	*
as an <b>appetizer</b> or <b>hors d'oeuvre</b> often baked in (a) <b>paste</b> . ** !	* appetitvækker * = * pasta, blød masse ** se side mørdej, butterdej 800
(A) <b>paste</b> is (a) dough made of of flour, water or milk	* butterdej
esp. when prepared with <b>shortening</b> ( butter, <b>lard</b> or other <b>fat</b> ).*	* ' smørelse ' * svinefedt * fedtstof
The paste is baked as pie or tart crust ( base or covering ),	*
as <b>patty cases / shells</b> , or other <b>pastry / pastries</b> .	* tartelet- / krustadeskal * butterdejsprodukter
<b>Filo paste, flaky paste, puff paste</b> and <b>shortcrust paste</b>	* fillodej / butterdej
are types of <b>short(ened) dough</b> which bakes into	* fedtstofholdig / fedtstoftilsat dej
<b>30 filo ( pastry ), flaky puff pastry</b> and <b>shortcrust pastry</b>	* butterdejsbagværk * = * =
with a lot of layers that easily crumbles.	*
A <b>patty</b> can be a thin round piece of finely divided food	* stegt eller bagt småret
as of meat ( <b>hamburger ( minced beef ) patty, pork patty</b> ).	* lille hakkebøf * flæskihakkebøf
or any item of food covered with a <b>paste</b> , breadcrumbs etc	* butterdej
and fried or baked such as a little pie, <b>tart</b> or <b>pâté</b> , or a thin	* tartelet * pâté
round piece as of sweets / candy ( a peppermint <b>patty</b> ).	\patei * pastil
In E a <b>pudding</b> is a hot or cold dish made from flour, fat	* pudding
and eggs; it may be a sweet dish or a dish with meat in or on it. *	*
( A ) <b>steak and kidney pie / pudding</b> is a hot dish.	* oksekød-og-nyre- * ~ overdækket tærte

<b>794</b> The <b>main course</b> comprises <b>seafood</b> ( <b>shellfish</b> and fish ), rice, <b>pasta</b> ( <b>spaghetti</b> , <b>macaroni</b> , <b>tagliatelle</b> , <b>ravioli</b> ), all kinds of <b>meat dishes</b> and some <b>vegetarian dishes</b> .	* hovedretafdelingen hovedretterne * =	* ~ alt godt fra havet * =	* skaldyr * =
Liz has (a) <b>prawn</b> E/A <b>shrimp cocktail</b> as a first course while John has (a) <b>salmon mousse</b> .	* kødret * rejecocktail * laksemousse		* vegetarret
A <b>fillet</b> (A& <b>filet</b> ) is a piece of meat or fish <b>without bones</b> . `filit / fi'lêi	* filet	* uden >	* ben
<b>Fish dishes</b> include boiled, steamed and <b>fried</b> fish.	* fiskeret		* stegt
A <b>fillet</b> of <b>fish</b> may be a (a) <b>filleted</b> ( <b>lemon</b> ) <b>sole</b> , <b>fillet</b> of <b>cod</b> , or a <b>breaded plaice fillet</b> .	* fiskefilet * torske filet	* filetteret * paneret	* søtunge * rødspætte...
<b>10</b> You can have a <b>cod</b> , <b>salmon</b> and <b>tuna</b> ( <b>fish</b> ) <b>steak</b> . ( Viewed as an article of food, <b>flesh</b> from fish is not included in <b>meats</b> ( muscle, heart, liver, kidney, <b>sweetbreads</b> ).	* torske- * kød på dyr * kød som fødemiddel	* lakse- * tun- * kotelet / bøf	* neck / throat ... : brisler * stomac ... : binyrer
Meat dishes include hot and cold <b>meats</b> such as beef, veal, pork ( pig meat ), mutton, lamb, fowl ( chicken, duck, turkey ) and <b>flesh</b> from other animals as used for food.	* kød (-art ) * * kød ( den bløde masse udenpå knoglerne )		
You can have <b>burgers – hamburgers</b> , <b>cheeseburgers</b> and <b>veggie burgers</b> – as well as different kinds of <b>steak</b> .	* = * vegetar ... * bøf	* = * =	* = * bøf
A <b>steak</b> is a slice of meat ( esp. beef ) or fish, or <b>chopped meat</b> prepared as a steak and <b>fried in a frying pan</b> ,	* hakket kød	* stege ngt.	* på > * stegepande
<b>20</b> <b>grilled on a grill</b> E/A <b>broiled on a broiler</b> or <b>barbecued</b> (<qued) <b>on a barbecue</b> (<que).	* grille * havegrille	* på ( en ) grill	* = * = * havegrill
<b>Breaded</b> fish or meat has been <b>rolled in breadcrumbs</b> . <b>Steak tartare</b> or <b>tartar(e) steak</b> is chopped <b>beefsteak</b> eaten raw usually with raw egg and <b>garnished with capers</b> , onions, <b>beetroot</b> E/A <b>beet</b> .	* paneret * bøf tatar, tatarbøf * pynte ngt. med ngt. * rødbede	* rullet / vendt i >	* brødkrummer, ~ rasp * kapers
<b>Beef cattle</b> ( calves, <b>bullocks</b> or <b>steers</b> ), <b>hogs</b> , <b>porkers</b> ( ` <b>broiler</b> ) <b>chickens</b> (A: <b>broilers</b> ) are <b>fattened</b> for their meat.	* kødkvæg * ( grill-) kylling * rygstykke *	* stud * hare	* slagtesvin * opfede ng. * hjortekød ( ++ = dyreryg )
Some people love <b>saddle</b> of lamb, <b>hare</b> or <b>venison</b> a large <b>joint</b> or <b>roast of meat</b> taken from the back.	* slagteri * = * udskæring * steg * stuvning sammenkogt ret * hakke ngt.	* slagter * slagtedyr	* slagte ngt. * skære ngt. ud * fed
<b>30</b> At a <b>slaughterhouse</b> E& <b>abattoire</b> , a <b>butcher slaughters</b> / <b>kills</b> / <b>butchers animals</b> for <b>slaughter</b> , and <b>cuts</b> them <b>out</b> in <b>cuts</b> so as some cuts are <b>lean</b> and some are <b>fat</b> .	* mørbrad * hænge * hænge > * sej	* mager * kød * være under varmetilberedning	
Some cuts are used as <b>roasts</b> , or cut out in steaks, or the meat may be cut into cubes for making (a) <b>stew</b> or into lumps to be <b>chopped</b> / <b>minced</b> /A& <b>ground</b> .			
Meat like <b>tenderloin</b> is always <b>tender</b> while some <b>meat</b> has to <b>hang</b> in order to <b>mature</b> / <b>ripen</b> and become tender.			
So the butcher <b>hangs</b> the <b>meat</b> to <b>mature</b> / <b>ripen</b> it.			
<b>Tough</b> meat has to <b>cook</b> for a long time to be tender.			

**795** Steaks are usually cut from the **chine** ( the **backbone** <sup>t\$ain</sup>

with adjoining parts ) or the **thigh** of **quadruped** animals. <sup>#ai</sup> <sup>`kwadrupe</sup>

**Chuck** (rib) ( `steak ) is the cut and steak(s) of beef from

between the **neck** and the **shoulder blade**, **middle rib** (steak )

is the cut between the shoulderblade and the **false ribs**,

**porterhouse** ( steak ) is the cut including the false ribs,

**entrecôte** is a steak **sliced** from between the ribs, <sup>`ântrêkêut</sup>

**loin** or **sirloin** ( steak ), is the cut from the **loin**,

the part of the chine between the false ribs and the **hipbone**,

**10** (a) **tenderloin** ( steak ) is the cut of either of two muscles

running between the ribs and the hipbone,

and (a) **rump** ( steak ) is the cut between the loin

and the **aitchbone** / **edgebone** / **rump bone** ( steak ) <sup>eit\$bêun</sup>

The **tailbones** form the last part of the **backbone** / **spine**.

The **topside** E/E&A **top round** of a **round** of **beef**

is the cut from the **thigh**.

**Fore** and **hind shank(s)** are the cuts of meat (E& joints) <sup>haind</sup>  
from the top part of the front leg and the back / hind leg.

Some cuts and steaks of veal are **back of veal**,

**20** **loin** with the **kidneys**, **leg of veal**, **fillet** of **veal**,

and **veal chops** / **cutlets**.

Some cuts of pork are **neck**, **foreloin**, **loin**, **tenderloin**,  
**sparerib**, and (a) **leg of pork** called (a) **ham** when **cured**.

**Bacon** and **gammon** (E) are sides and ham preserved with  
salt or **smoked** and used as sliced bacon and **gammon steak**.

Other steaks are **pork chops** / **cutlets** and **spareribs**.

Cuts and steaks of lamb are **leg of lamb**  
and **lamb chops** / **cutlets**.

When fowl(s), fish, or other entire animals and cuts of meat  
**30** are cooked, they are boiled or roasted in a large pot,  
roasted in an oven or grilled, and cut out in lumps or slices.

You can have boiled, fried or **mashed potatoes**,  
chips, vegetables, sauce or gravy with the meat.

Meat, vegetables and fruit can be **stewed** or **casseroled**.

Some people prefer **homely** cooking; a **stew** is a hot meal <sup>stju~</sup>  
made by cooking meat and vegetables slowly in liquid.

A **casserole** is a stew cooked in a **casserole** in an oven.

A **casserole** ( **dish** ) is a deep dish with a **lid**,  
used for baking and cooking in an oven.

\* rygstykke, kam

\* rygsøjle / -rad

\* lår

\* firbenet

\* tykkam

\* hals

\* skulderblad

\* højreb

\* & **floating ribs** ~ falske ribben  
( ikke fæstnet til brystbenet )

\* tyksteg

\* =

\* skære ngt. skive

\* lændestykke, mørbradsteg  
tyksteg / tyndsteg  
\* hofteben

\* lænd

\* mørbrad

\*

\* halestykke tyksteg

\* haleben ( culottesteg )

\* halebensknogler

\* ryg- / hvirvelsøjle

\* ( yder-) lår / ( inder-) lår

\* lår + klump

\* lår

\* for- / bagskank

\*

\* kalvekam

\* nyrestykke

\* kalvekølle / -skank

\* kalvefilet

\* kalvekotelet

\* nakkekam \* mellemkam \* mørbradstykke \* mørbrad

\* ribbensteg \* skinke \* skinke \* konservere  
stege- / kogeflæsk svinekølle præservede ngt.  
\* = ( konserveret flæske- eller skinkestykke )

\* røge ngt.

\* ~ saltet &/ røget skinke-

\* steg

\* svinekotelet

\* lammekølle

\* lammekotelet

\*

\*

\*

\* ~ kartoffelmos

\*

\* stuve /  
koge ngt. sammen i gryde  
\* ~ enkel og god ( madlavning )

\* ... i fad med låg i ovn

\* stuvning  
sammenkogt ret

\* ovnret

\* ildfast fad med låg

\* =

\* låg

\*

<b>796</b> Liz <b>wavers between</b> roast <b>loin</b> of beef or pork	* vakle mellem ng.	* ( stegt ) okse / svinekam
but chooses the last as it has <b>suitably low fat on</b> it.	* passende tilpas	* fedt ~ -indhold * på sig
So she gets slices of a <b>roast loin</b> of <b>pork</b> with <b>crackling</b> .	* flæskkesteg	* sprød svær
<b>Crackling</b> come from the thick <b>outer skin</b> called the <b>rind</b> raind	* ( flæske-) svær	* overhud * sværen / skorpen ( på visse madvarer )
of the pork when it has been cut across in <b>slender</b> pieces,	* tynd	
and roasted so that the roast gets a <b>crackly / crisp rind</b> .	* sprød >	* svær
It <b>crackles</b> when Liz takes a bite of a <b>piece of crackling</b> .	* knaser	* stykke > * flæskesvær
When she chews and <b>cracks</b> the crackling, you hear	* kvaser ng.	
a / the <b>crackle</b> or <b>crackling</b> – the <b>slight cracking</b> sounds,	* knasen	* svag * knaldende
<b>10</b> rapidly repeated – of every bite of crackling being chewed.	*	
( <b>Cracklings</b> are the crisp residue pieces of esp. fried hog fat. )	* ~ fedtegrever	
<b>Vacillating between</b> veal and beef, John can have	* vakle ( frem og tilbage ) mellem ( kalve- / oksekød )	
a cutlet or fillet of veal ( a <b>fillet steak</b> has no bone in it ),	* fillet-	* bøf
or a fillet, (a) <b>rump, sirloin</b> or <b>tenderloin</b> ( beef> ) <b>steak</b>	* tykstegs- * tyndstegs- * mørbrad- * bøf	
As he feels like ( having ) ( beef> ) <b>steak</b> ,	* kvalitetsbøf	
he eventually decides to have a sirloin ( steak ).	*	
<b>Salted</b> and <b>peppered</b> , a steak should be <b>well done</b>	* salte ng.	* pebre ng.
or <b>rare done</b> and never <b>underdone</b> or <b>overdone</b> .	* halv- / rødstegt	* stegt for lidt * ... for meget
Liz has (a) chocolate <b>pudding</b> and John has	* mørbrad	* budding
<b>20</b> (a) strawberry <b>mousse</b> for dessert / E& <b>afters</b> or <b>pudding</b> .	* efterret	
A <b>mince pie</b> filled with <b>mincemeat</b>	* frugttærte	* tørret, finthakket frugt
and (a) <b>Christmas pudding</b> also filled with dried fruit	* =	
are sweet desserts, popular especially at Christmas.	*	
Orange <b>peel / rind / zest</b> is used in cooking.	* skal	
<b>Pancakes</b> are made of (a) pancake <b>batter / dough</b> (U, sg.)	* pandekage	* dej
Some people like a <b>Danish</b> ( <b>pastry</b> ) with their coffee.	* wienerbrød	
Even if the restaurant is a bit <b>shorthanded / short-staffed</b>	* underbemandet	
at the moment, it provides <b>quality customer service</b> .	* kvalitetskundebetjening	
A waitress, apparently at her first day of work, is	*	
<b>30 mincing about</b> in her high-heeled shoes.	* stavre rundt	
Having noticed her unnatural and silly way of walking,	*	
one of her colleagues doesn't <b>mince</b> ( his ) <b>words</b>	* ikke moderere sine ord tale lige ud af posen	
as he comments her choice of footwear.	*	
Believing to be <b>out of earshot</b> , but within earshot of Liz	* udenfor hørevidde	
as she was on her way to the loo, he used a language	*	
<b>not for tender years</b> .	* ikke for sarte ører	
Whether or not he <b>made mincemeat</b> of her	* ~ jorde ng.	
<b>one never knows</b> , but in all cases she <b>resumes</b> serving	* kan man ikke vide må stå hen i det uvisse	* genoptage ng.
in a pair of shoes more suitable for her work.	*	

**797 In their dire distress, out of dire necessity,**

John and Liz want a friend of theirs to **repay** a loan.

They want him to **repay** them the money they lent him.

John **girds (up)** his **loins to** asks him to **repay it to** them  
as he **undertook to repay** them the loan within two month.

'When are you going to **repay** us ? –

when will you **pay** us **back** ? ' John asks.

'If I have to **pay** you **back** the loan before Christmas,  
my family will have a lousy Christmas,' he moans, 'It would be

**10 like falling out of the frying pan and into the fire –**  
and do you really want me to **rob Peter to pay Paul.**'

'I promise to **pay** () **back** the money after Christmas –  
I promise to **pay** it **back to** you very soon after Christmas.

'I'll **pay** () **off** the loan after Christmas,' he promises.

Even if he's **given / granted { more time ( for repayment )**  
// an **extension** / a **postponement** ( of the repayment )  
// a **respite** ( before he has to pay them )  
`respait  
they have a hard time getting him to **pay`up**.

As they know he has a hard time **paying`up**,

**20 they for`bear from** reproaches.

They **forbear from demanding payment from** him  
and **forbear to press** him **for payment** until they know  
he's able to { **pay** them **back** ( the money he owes ( them ) )  
/ **pay** () **back** the money ( **to** them )  
/ **repay** them &/ all the money he had borrowed ( from them )

He's very grateful for their **forbearance**.  
få~`beêrêns

Having eventually **paid** () **off** the loan / the debt,  
he thanks them for being so **forbearing,**  
and continues,' How can I ever **repay** you **for** your generosity

**30 – I'd like to do something to repay** all your kindness.'

Their trust in him is **repaid with** his fierce loyalty.

He **confides to** them **that** before he got another job,  
it has **been** ( **all** ) **downhill for** his health,  
and **downhill all the way for** his career,

As he **went downhill rapidly** and **shut himself up**,  
his marriage **went downhill**.

Fortunately all his initial problems are now solved.

It seems to **be** ( **all** ) **downhill** ( **from now on / here** ).

Hopefully it's **downhill all the way** ( **from now on / here** ).

\* i svære vanskeligheder \* af tvingende nødvendighed

\* tilbagebetale ng.

\*

\* berede sig på at gøre ng. ( hum. ) \* ... ng. til ng.  
( sætte bælte om lænden )

\* påtage sig / love at - \* ... ng. ng.

\* betale ng. tilbage

\*

\* ... ng. tilbage til ng.

\*

\* komme fra asken i ilden

\* tage fra den ene for at betale til den anden

\* betale ng. tilbage

\*

\* tilbagebetale ng. til ng.

\* give udsættelse / henstand

\* =

\* =

\* betale det hele tilbage

\*

\* afholde sig fra ng.

\* ... at -

\* rykke ng. for betaling

\* ... at -

\* =

\* betale ng. ( ng. ) tilbage

\*

\* =

\* overbæren- / langmodighed

\* betale ng. færdigt

\* overbærende  
langmodig

\* gengælde ng. for ng.

\* gengælde ng.

\* ... ng. med ng.

\* betro sig til ng. at -

\* det >

\* gå nedadbakke for ng.

\* & være nedtur for ng.

\* det går nedadbakke for ng.

\* slutte sig inde

\* gå nedadbakke

\*

\* ( bare ) nedadbakke ( fra nu af / herfra )

\* ... hele vejen ...

## 798 Eventually John finds employment in a consultancy

firm.

He's offered **waged employment** in an IT **consultancy**.

Working as an IT **consultant** in the IT **consulting firm**,  
he provides IT **consulting** (advice) / **consultancy**

to companies in need of IT **consultation**.

He **earns** good weekly **wages**.

Earning an **average wage** of £ 400, he **earns** a **good wage**.

After their time **on short commons**, they feel **flush** again.

**10** They no longer **worriedly** have to **refer to** / **consult**  
their **pocket** E/A **pocketbook** or financial adviser all the time.

Many organizations have an **advisory / consultative body**  
to help solving their problems.

Having **referred to** / **consulted** their **user manuals** in vain,  
many organizations **refer to** / **consult** ( **with** ) a consultancy  
**about** / **on** their IT problems.

So many companies have a **consultant on** IT affairs.

One day, John has to visit a client / customer who **prefers**  
their **visit to take place in** the evening **at** the local inn.

**20** Having had a good breakfast to **get** his **day rolling**,  
and kissed Liz goodbye, he was ready to **roll**.

On his way, he has to **make** a **diversion** / **detour**,  
by **taking** a **signposted diversion** E/A **detour**.

The traffic has to **circumvent** some **roadworks** E/A **<work>**,  
so the traffic is **diverted** ( **away from** the main road )  
( **on** ) **to byroads** and **byways**.

To his surprise John passes by some beautiful landscape,  
well worth **making** a **diversion** / **detour** to see.

Years ago a river **diversion** was made to **reclaim** farm **land**.

**30** As the **meandering** river and all surface water have been  
**diverted away from** the area **into** a straight canal,  
the **wetland** has changed into **dull** farm land  
with **little** / **poor** biological **diversity** / **variety**.

Recently, much focus has been **diverted from**  
**reclamation of** land **onto** environmental **restoration**.

A campaign to **halt** the **diversion of** the river has  
**meant** funds **being diverted from** land reclamation budgets  
**into** nature restoration budgets.

\* finde ansættelse i ngt.

\* rådgivning  
konsulentbistand

\*

\* ( dag- / uge- ) lønnet ...

\* konsulentfirma

\* konsulent  
rådgiver

\* =

\* konsulent rådgivning

\* konsulentrådgivning (-s-modtagelse )

\* få gode ugelønninger

\* gennemsnits(uge)løn på ngt.

\* få en god løn

\* på smalkost ( madration )

\* rig / ved maffen

\* bekymret

\* rette opmærksomhed mod /  
konsultere ( rådføre sig med ) ngt. / ng.

\* lomme / glds: pengepung, tegnebog A / E notesbog  
~ pengebeholdning

\* rådgivende

\* organ

\*

\* henvende sig til /  
konsultere / rådføre sig med ngt.

\* bruger \* & brugsanvisning

\* henvende sig til / konsultere ( rådføre sig med ) ng. >

\* om ngt.

\* rådgiver til ngt.

\* foretrække ngt. >

\* besøg ⇔ at > \* finde sted > \* om ( tid ) \* på ( stred )  
( aftenen ) ( kroen )

\* ~ få dagen godt i gang

\* ~ komme afsted

\* foretage ( gå / køre ) >

\* en ( tvungen ) omvej

\* tage >

\* skiltet

\* ( tvungen ) omfartsvej

\* komme udenom >

\* vejarbejde

\* være omledt >

\* væk fra ( vej )

\* om til >

\* bivej

\* =

\*

\* tage >

\* en ( frivillig ) omvej

\* ( flod ) afledning

\* indvinde >

\* land

\* slyngende

\* ( vand ) ledt væk fra ngt. >

\* ind i ngt.

\* vådområderne

\* kedeligt

\* ringe / fattig

\* diversitet, variation / =

\* ( fokus ) ledt fra ngt.

\* indvinding af ( land ) \* over på ngt. \* genopretning

\* sætte en stopper for ngt.

\* afledning af ( flod )

\* betyde, ~ føre til ngt. ⇔ at -

\* ledt fra ( budget ) >

\* ind i ( budget )

<b>799</b> The river was <b>restored to</b> its former <b>course of meanders</b> :	* genoprettet til ng.	* forløb af >	* slyngning
a <b>winding ribbon of</b> water.	* slyngende		* bånd af ( vand )
As the river again <b>meandered</b> slowly <b>down to</b> the sea,	* slynge sig >		* ~ ud mod havet
the whole area around the <b>meandering</b> river regained	* slyngende		
a <b>great / wide / rich</b> { <b>diversity / variety</b> of flora and fauna.	* stor / bred / rig		* diversitet, variation / =
The <b>wetland(s)</b> with its / their <b>meanderings</b> (pl.) <b>of</b> the river	* vådområde		* slyngninger
was / were <b>restored to</b> its / their former glory.	* genskabt til ng.		
The <b>revived</b> and <b>reviving vegetation</b> and <b>animal life</b>	* genoplivet * genopstået >	* & planteliv	* dyre- * liv
again <b>divert</b> professional as well as amateur nature lovers	* adspredelse / underholde ng.		
<b>10</b> with deep <b>reverence for</b> nature.	* ærbødighed overfor ng.		
Liz has <b>packed</b> him some food for the journey.	* pakke ng. ng.		
Having <b>taking a ( side ) trip down a dead-end byway</b> ,	* tage > * ~ afstikker	* ned ad >	* blind * bivej
he <b>stops for</b> lunch / <b>to</b> eat lunch.	* stoppe / standse >	* ~ med ng.	for øje * for at -
<b>Curious about</b> the geography of his <b>whereabouts</b> ,	* nysgerrig vedrørende ng.		* opholdssted
he fetches and <b>unfolds</b> the <b>road / route map</b>	* folde > ud	* vej- / rute-	* kort
he keeps in the <b>glove compartment / box</b> .	* handske-		* rum
In order to check the address of his destination,	*		
he <b>refers to / consults</b> his <b>notebook</b> / <b>pocketbook</b>	* rådføre sig med / se i >	* notesbog, lommebog /	=
He <b>refers to / consults</b> a <b>street map</b> to know his way.	* rådføre sig med / ~ se på ng.		
<b>20</b> <b>Getting a mention</b> on the back of the map,	* få >		* omtale
the town is described as full of <b>diversions / distractions</b> .	* adspredelser		
<b>Referring to / consulting</b> his watch, he suddenly realizes	* rådføre sig med / ~ se på ng.		
he's in a hurry.	*		
For him, having to <b>take a diversion</b> E/A <b>detour</b> has been	* tage en omkørselsvej		
a welcome <b>diversion / distraction from</b> a long <b>boring / dull</b>	* afledning fra ng.	* kedelig	* =
<b>dreary drive</b> .	* =		* køretur
<sup>`drièri</sup> In the US people may <b>detour</b> a place for some reason	* tage ( gå / køre ) udenom ng.		
or they <b>detour to</b> a place for some reason.	* tage ( gå / køre ) en omvej til et sted		
At their meeting, John's client has a <b>complaint</b> / in-f. <b>moan</b>	*		
<b>30</b> <b>about</b> the company's new IT system.	*		
<b>Moaning ( on / about</b> the IT system ) ( <b>to</b> John ),	* beklage sig / klage ( over ng. ) ( til ng. )		
the client <b>moans that</b> the system has been praised to be	* beklage sig / klage over at -		
a time saver but the employees have <b>moaned</b> and <b>groaned</b> .	* jamre og klage		
They kept <b>moaning ( at him ) ( on / about</b> the system ).	* beklage sig / klage ( til ng. ) ( over ng. )		
' What are you <b>moaning on / about</b> ? ' he has asked	* ( hvad ) jamrer / ( be-) klager I ( jer ) over		
the <b>moaners</b> at their usual <b>moans</b> and <b>groans</b> until he has	* klager	* beklagelser	* =
realized that the system in fact proved to be a <b>time guzzler</b> .	* ~ tidssluger / -røver		
While the trees <b>moan</b> in the wind outside, the manager	* ~ give en klagende lyd		
<b>moans that</b> what works in theory might not work in practice.	* klage over at -		

ad 728 ) In a patient's <b>medical record</b> , all relevant <b>records</b>	* ~ syge-   * ~ journal   * informationer, optegnelser
are <b>readily available</b> ; they are easily available <b>ready to hand</b> .	* ~ let   * tilgængelige   * ~ lige >   * for hånden
ad 741 ) P(a)edophilia is considered <b>abhorrent / disgusting</b> /	* afskyelig, modbydeligt / =
<b>loathsome / repugnant / repulsive, despicable / detestable</b>	* = / = / =   * foragtelig / =
and <b>outrageous to</b> modern civilized societies.	* foragteligt   * oprørende, uhyrligt for ng.
Filled with <b>abhorrence / disgust / loathing / repugnance /</b>	* afsky
<b>repulsion, detestation for</b> and <b>outrage at</b> p(a)edophilia,	* =   * foragt for   * harme, vrede over ( pædofili )
the vast majority of people in modern civilized societies	*
<b>abhor / loathe</b> and <b>despise / detest</b> p(a)edophilia,	* afsky / = >   * foragte / = ng.
and <b>detest / loath</b> and <b>despise</b> p(a)edophiles.	* afsky, hade / = >   * foragte ( pædofile )
ad 767 ) A government's <b>focus on</b> religion may be	* fokus på ng.
a welcome <b>distraction / diversion from</b> social problems	* afledning fra ng.
as it <b>distracts / diverts</b> people's <b>attention away from</b>	* aflede >   * opmærksomhed fra ng. / ng.
the government and the country's economic problems.	*
Some people are <b>nauseated</b> by some people's	* få kvalme af ng.
<b>nauseating</b> religious <b>excesses</b> .	* kvalmende   * udskejelser
ad 782 )	
In the UK, taking care of the <b>removal of refuse</b>	* fjernelse af >   * affald, skrald
as part of a <b>waste / refuse</b> { <b>disposal / collection</b> system,	* affald / =   ~ dagrenovation   * fjernelse / indsamling
a <b>refuse collector / a dustman / a bin man</b>	* ~ skraldemand
collects <b>domestic / household</b> { <b>waste(s) / refuse / rubbish</b> .	* husholtnings- / =   * affald, skrald / = / =
In the US a <b>garbage man / collector</b> collects <b>waste(s) /</b>	* ~ skraldemand   * - - -
<b>refuse / garbage / trash</b> .	* - - -
ad 783 )	
The <b>crude</b> and <b>amateurish</b> robbery developed into	* ~ simpelt, primitivt   * amatøragtigt ( røveri )
a <b>gun battle between</b> the bank <b>robber</b> and the police.	* skydevåben-   * kamp   * ( bank ) røver
ad 793 )	~ skudveksling
* The restaurant offers <b>set</b> meals: a <b>set</b> breakfast, lunch,	* ~ fast sammensat ( måltid )
and dinner.	*
The <b>menu</b> for each meal shows the <b>set menu</b>	* menu (-kort ) for ng.   * ~ fast sammensat >   * menu
as well as the other dishes available.	*
** Using a <b>rolling pin</b> , you <b>roll</b> ( ) <b>out</b> ) the <b>pastry</b> thinly	* ~ kagerulle   * rulle >   * butterdej   * ud
on a <b>floured</b> surface.	* melbestrøet